

粵卷

jyut₋₆ gyun⁻²

The Cantonese Scrolls

心理角色扮演學習廣東話嘅遊戲

sam⁻¹ lei₋₅ gok₋₃ sik⁻¹ baan₋₆ jin⁻² hok₋₆ zaap₋₆ gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻² ge₋₃ jau₋₄ hei₋₃

A Cantonese Language Learning Mental Role Playing Game

范俊樂

faan₋₆ zeon₋₃ lok₋₆

Jonathan Vasquez

二零二六年三月十九日朝早八點

ji₋₆ ling₋₄ ji₋₆ luk₋₆ nin₋₄ saam⁻¹ jyut₋₆ sap₋₆ gau⁻² jat₋₆ ziu⁻¹ zou⁻² baat₋₃ dim⁻²

2026-03-19-0800

Copyright © 2023-2026 Jonathan Vasquez <jon@xyinn.org>

*This game is dedicated to my beautiful wife, **Fallon**, and my dear late Chinchilla daughter, **Leslie**, who have both forever changed my life.*

Juntos para siempre.



主 選 單
zyu⁻² syun⁻² daan⁻¹

Main Menu

Main Menu

Welcome to ***The Cantonese Scrolls***, 粵卷 (jyut₆ gyun²), ***A Cantonese Language Learning Mental Role Playing Game.***

This game can be played in two modes:

<i>Single Player</i>	This mode is for people who prefer studying independently.
<i>Multiplayer (Couch Co-Op)</i>	This mode is identical to the above, but you'll have someone else with you to go along for the ride.

Game Standards

<i>Writing System</i>	<u>Written Cantonese</u>
<i>Character System</i>	<u>Traditional Chinese</u>
<i>Romanization System</i>	<u>Jyutping</u>
<i>Base Style</i>	<u>Hong Kong Cantonese</u>

A Living Document

This game is ***a living document***, and will continuously be updated with more content, extensions, and language corrections.

License

This game can be ***freely downloaded, used, and/or shared*** by anyone for either ***personal*** or ***educational*** purposes. If you are interested in using it ***commercially***, please contact me. Modifications to this document are ***not allowed***.

About

Since ***Cantonese has no formal standardization for its phonetic and writing systems***, it is extremely difficult for a new learner to find resources for it, and pick up the language. My goal for this game is to document the Cantonese language as I currently understand it, and create a fun and simple large body of work, that can be ***freely*** used by anyone to learn the language.

This game is available for download, free of charge, with no internet connection required. If you found this game useful and would like to support me in its development, please consider donating by ***clicking the donate coin below***. Thank you!



點 玩

dim⁻² waan⁻²

How To Play

How To Play

Greetings, stranger. I'm surprised to see you here.

The Cantonese Scrolls is a game that is exclusively designed to be played ***in your mind***. As you progress through the game, you will encounter fierce monsters that you don't understand. These monsters are called ***Monsters of Understanding***. They are only monsters because you don't understand them yet, however, as you fight each of these monsters, you will eventually defeat them through ***Understanding***. A monster is only defeated once you understand them. It is recommended not to rush through the game, and make sure to clear each zone without leaving any monsters behind. Rushing through the game without properly defeating the monsters is a recipe for disaster.

Each encounter in ***The Cantonese Scrolls*** is designed to be a single logical step from your current position to the next. This means that every step is optimized to minimize distractions, misunderstanding, and reduce the mental load related to processing new information. Carefully allowing you to focus on the present moment, and allow maximum mental clarity through mindfulness and self reflection of the situation at hand.

There is no sound component for ***The Cantonese Scrolls***. However, the game is using the ***Jyutping*** standard for its romanization. There are many existing resources online that can teach you the pronunciation. Please look for ***Jyutping Pronunciation Guides*** online. It's ok if your pronunciation isn't perfect right from the start. Just jump in and start playing. You'll get better over time. Once you finish the game, you can continue to improve your Cantonese skills by playing the game again and attempting to gain deeper understanding of these sacred texts.

Lastly, for faster navigation throughout the game, please use the ***Waypoint*** system, which can be used through your PDF reader's ***outline*** or ***bookmark*** function.

With that said stranger, never forget that the way to learn a language, is to build a world around it.

Welcome to ***The Cantonese Scrolls***. Your adventure awaits ...

第一幕

dai₆ jat⁻¹ mok₆

Act 1

落雨田

lok₆ jyu₅ tin₄

Raining Field

第一任務
dai₋₆ jat⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 1

搵緊身份
wan⁻² gan⁻² san⁻¹ fan⁻²

Searching For Identity

我

ngo₅

I

我 係

ngo₅ hai₆

I am

我 係 人 .

ngo₅ hai₆ jan₄.

I am a person.

我

ngo₅

I

我 係

ngo₅ hai₆

I am

我 唔 係

ngo₅ m₄ hai₆

I am not

我 唔 係 人 .

ngo₅ m₄ hai₆ jan₄.

I am not a person.

我

ngo˥˩

I

我 係

ngo˥˩ hai˨˩

I am

我 係 人

ngo˥˩ hai˨˩ jan˨˩˥

I am a person

我 係 美 國 人 .

ngo˥˩ hai˨˩ mei˥˩ gwok˨˩˥ jan˨˩˥

I am American.

我

ngo₅

I

我 係

ngo₅ hai₆

I am

我 唔 係

ngo₅ m₄ hai₆

I am not

我 唔 係 香 港 人 .

ngo₅ m₄ hai₆ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄.

I am not a Hong Konger.

我

ngo₅

I

我 哋

ngo₅ dei⁻²

We

我 哋 係

ngo₅ dei⁻² hai₆

We are

我 哋 係 香 港 人 .

ngo₅ dei⁻² hai₆ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄.

We are Hong Kongers.

你

nei₅

You

你 係

nei₅ hai₆

You are

你 係 美 國 人 .

nei₅ hai₆ mei₅ gwok₃ jan₄.

You are American.

你 哋 係 美 國 人 .

nei₅ dei⁻² hai₆ mei₅ gwok₃ jan₄.

You are all American.

佢

keoi₅

He/She/It/They

佢 係

keoi₅ hai₆

She is

佢 係 台 灣 人 .

keoi₅ hai₆ toi₄ waan⁻¹ jan₄.

She is Taiwanese.

佢 哋 係 台 灣 人 .

keoi₅ dei⁻² hai₆ toi₄ waan⁻¹ jan₄.

They are Taiwanese.

佢哋唔係台灣人。
keoi₅ dei⁻² m₄ hai₆ toi₄ waan⁻¹ jan₄.

They are not Taiwanese.

我

ngo˩˥

I

我 哋

ngo˩˥ dei˨˥˨

We

我 哋 係

ngo˩˥ dei˨˥˨ hai˨˥˨

We are

我 哋 係 朋 友 .

ngo˩˥ dei˨˥˨ hai˨˥˨ pang˨˥˨ jau˩˥˨

We are friends.

我 哋 都 係 朋 友 .

ngo₅ dei² dou¹ hai₆ pang₄ jau₅.

We are all friends.

我

ngo₅

I

我 係

ngo₅ hai₆

I am

我 係 中 國 人 .

ngo₅ hai₆ zung⁻¹ gwok⁻³ jan₄.

I am Chinese.

我 都 係 中 國 人 .

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ hai₆ zung⁻¹ gwok⁻³ jan₄.

I am also Chinese.

佢

keoi₅

He

佢 係

keoi₅ hai₆

He is

佢 係 學 生 .

keoi₅ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹.

He is a student.

佢 哋 都 係 學 生 .

keoi₅ dei⁻² dou⁻¹ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹.

They are all students.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Sound Information

Cantonese is among one of the oldest living languages still used today, with earlier versions of the language dating back to at least the Tang Dynasty (618 CE to 907 CE)¹. This is at least **1400** years! Cantonese has also retained a lot of older linguistic properties that existed during the Middle Chinese² era of the language, and that have been either lost or removed from other Chinese branches. The connection between Cantonese and the Tang Era is so strong that Cantonese people would sometimes refer to themselves as: **Tang People**, 唐人 (tong₄ jan₄), and Chinatowns in Cantonese are called: **Tang People Street**, 唐人街 (tong₄ jan₄ gaai⁻¹).

During this time, the language has continued to evolve and develop, and that also includes the way that Cantonese speakers pronounce words. Due to this difference, there are differences in pronunciation in a variety of different scenarios, including slight modifications between **casual** and **formal** speech and thus the **standard romanization** and the alternatives may differ slightly. **The Cantonese Scrolls**, 粵卷 (jyut₆ gyun⁻²), uses the **Jyutping** 粵拼 (jyut₆ ping₃) standard for all romanization in the game. The game also uses Jonathan Chui's **Cantonese Font** for the font and romanization symbols.

Below is a list of examples for some of the sound modifications you may encounter:

- Characters starting with the vowel **i** sound more like an **e**. Therefore, **to invite**, 請 (cing⁻²), sounds more like ceng⁻², and **to hear**, 聽 (ting₃), sounds more like teng₃.
- Characters starting with the letter **n** are switched to an **l**. For example, **you**, 你 (nei₅), would become lei₅, and **woman**, 女 (neoi₅), would become leoi₅.
- The sound for **ng** (which is different from the **n** mentioned above) is sometimes added or removed from the beginning of some words. For example, **I**, 我 (ngo₅), and **love**, 愛 (oi₃), may end up sounding like o₅ and ngoi₃ instead. Some characters do actually start with **ng**, and some other characters do actually just start with an **o**. However, since not every speaker knows the original sound for every character on the fly, they are sometimes mistakenly added or removed to all characters starting with either **o** or **ng**. This is a hyper correction.

¹https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tang_dynasty

²https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middle_Chinese

Some of these sound modifications are differences between *casual* and *literal* speech, and some are considered **Lazy Pronunciation**, 懶音 (laan₅ jam⁻¹), and are pretty common. Putting this all together, if I said to my wife: **You are a beautiful woman. I love you**, the standard pronunciation would be: 你係靚女。我愛你 (nei₅ hai₆ leng₃ nei₅. ngo₅ oi₃ nei₅), but in reality it may sound more like: lei₅ hai₆ leng₃ lei₅. ngo₅ ngoi₃ lei₅. To make things more interesting, people can decide how much of the lazy pronunciation they want to use, so it is up to the individual on how they want to express themselves, and doesn't need to be perfectly consistent.

To make things easier for yourself, I would recommend just using the standard pronunciations as I've written them, and you can adjust your pronunciation over time based on the Cantonese speakers you are speaking with.

Yes/No In Cantonese

If you want to make a statement, either affirming something, or negating something, you can either use the verb directly, or add 唔 (m₄) before the verb to negate the verb. At the same time, Cantonese doesn't have a generic word for Yes and No. So the same exact technique is used for Yes or No responses as well.

你 係 唔 係 龍 貓 ？

nei₅ hai₆ m₄ hai₆ lung₄ maau⁻¹?

Are you a Chinchilla?

係 . 我 係 龍 貓 .

hai₆. ngo₅ hai₆ lung₄ maau⁻¹.

Yes. I am a Chinchilla.

唔 係 . 我 唔 係 龍 貓 .

m₄ hai₆. ngo₅ m₄ hai₆ lung₄ maau⁻¹.

No. I am not a Chinchilla.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

佢哋係香港人。你哋都
係香港人。我唔係香港
人。我係美國人。我哋唔
係學生。我哋係朋友。佢
係學生。你都係學生。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

佢哋係香港人。你哋都係香港人。我唔係香港人。我係美國人。我哋唔係學生。我哋係朋友。佢係學生。你都係學生。

keoi₅ dei⁻² hai₆ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄. nei₅ dei⁻² dou⁻¹ hai₆
hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄. ngo₅ m₄ hai₆ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄.
ngo₅ hai₆ mei₅ gwok⁻³ jan₄. ngo₅ dei⁻² m₄ hai₆ hok₆
saang⁻¹. ngo₅ dei⁻² hai₆ pang₄ jau₅. keoi₅ hai₆ hok₆
saang⁻¹. nei₅ dou⁻¹ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹.

They are Hongkongers. You all are also Hongkongers. I am not a Hongkonger. I am American. We are not students. We are friends. He is a student. You are also a student.



第二任務

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 2

有冇嘢

jau_{,5} mou_{,5} je_{,5}

Having Or Not Having Stuff

我

ngo,5

I

我 有

ngo,5 jau,5

I have

我 有 朋 友 .

ngo,5 jau,5 pang,4 jau,5.

I have friends.

我 有 一 個 朋 友 .

ngo,5 jau,5 jat⁻¹ go-3 pang,4 jau,5.

I have a friend.

我 有 一 隻 狗 .

ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ zek₋₃ gau⁻².

I have a dog.

我 有 一 條 魚 .

ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ tiu₋₄ jyu₋₄.

I have a fish.

我

ngo,5

I

我 冇

ngo,5 mou,5

I don't have

我 冇 朋 友 .

ngo,5 mou,5 pang,~4 jau,5.

I don't have friends.

你

nei,5

You

你 有

nei,5 jau,5

You have

你 有 朋 友 .

nei,5 jau,5 pang~4 jau,5.

You have friends.

你 冇 朋 友 .

nei,5 mou,5 pang~4 jau,5.

You don't have friends.

你 有 冇 朋 友 ？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ pang₄ jau₅?

Do you have friends?

有 ． 我 有 朋 友 ．

jau₅. ngo₅ jau₅ pang₄ jau₅.

Yes. I have friends.

冇 ． 我 冇 朋 友 ．

mou₅. ngo₅ mou₅ pang₄ jau₅.

No. I don't have friends.

—
jat⁻¹
1

—, —
jat⁻¹, ji₋₆
1, 2

—, —, —
jat⁻¹, ji₋₆, saam⁻¹
1, 2, 3

一隻狗

jat⁻¹ zek-3 gau⁻²

1 Dog

兩隻狗

loeng₅ zek-3 gau⁻²

2 Dogs

三隻狗

saam⁻¹ zek-3 gau⁻²

3 Dogs

你有冇三隻狗？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ saam⁻¹ zek-3 gau⁻²?

Do you have 3 dogs?

有·我有三隻狗·

jau₅. ngo₅ jau₅ saam⁻¹ zek₋₃ gau⁻².

Yes. I have 3 dogs.

冇·我有三隻狗·我有兩
隻狗·

mou₅. ngo₅ mou₅ saam⁻¹ zek₋₃ gau⁻². ngo₅ jau₅ loeng₅
zek₋₃ gau⁻².

No. I don't have 3 dogs. I have 2 dogs.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Classifiers: 隻 + 個

In Cantonese, whenever we want to say something that contains a quantity, we need to also provide a classifier. For example, if we wanted to say: **I have 8 chinchillas**, we can use the 隻 (zek-3) character, which is a classifier usually used for animals. Therefore we would say 我有八隻龍貓 (ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 zek-3 lung,4 mau-1), and not 我有八龍貓 (ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 lung,4 mau-1). If you don't know the classifier for something, you usually can use the generic classifier, 個 (go-3), for it, until you learn the correct one. So you could technically also say 我有八個龍貓 (ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 go-3 lung,4 mau-1), but it may sound a little weird.

我有八隻龍貓。

ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 zek-3 lung,4 mau-1.

I have 8 chinchillas.

佢哋有貓。

keoi,5 dei-2 jau,5 mau-1.

They have (a) cat(s).

Asking Questions About Possessions: 有 冇

If you want to ask someone a Yes/No question regarding whether or not they have something, you can put the 有 (jau₅) and 冇 (mou₅) characters together to ask the question, turning it into: **do you have or don't have** said thing.

你 有 冇 龍 貓 ？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ lung₄ maau⁻¹?

Do you have chinchillas?

你 有 冇 兄 弟 姊 妹 ？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ hing⁻¹ dai₆ zi⁻² mui₆?

Do you have brothers and sisters?

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

佢哋有三隻狗。我有狗。

你哋有兩隻狗。

三，二，一，二，三。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

佢哋有三隻狗。我有狗。
你哋有兩隻狗。

keoi₅ dei⁻² jau₅ saam⁻¹ zek⁻³ gau⁻². ngo₅ jau₅ gau⁻². nei₅
dei⁻² jau₅ loeng₅ zek⁻³ gau⁻².

They have three dogs. I have a dog. You all have two dogs.

三，二，一，二，三。

saam⁻¹, ji₋₆, jat⁻¹, ji₋₆, saam⁻¹.

3, 2, 1, 2, 3.



第三任務

dai₋₆ saam⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 3

嗰本書係我嘅

go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai₋₆ ngo_{,5} ge⁻³

That's My Book

一

jat⁻¹

1

一 本 書

jat⁻¹

bun⁻²

syu⁻¹

1 book

我

ngo,5

I

我 嘅

ngo,5 ge-3

My

我 嘅 書

ngo,5 ge-3 syu⁻¹

My book

我 本 書

ngo,5 bun⁻² syu⁻¹

My book

呢

ni⁻¹

This

呢 本 書

ni⁻¹

bun⁻²

syu⁻¹

This book

個

go⁻²

That

個 本 書

go⁻²

bun⁻²

syu⁻¹

That book

呢

ni⁻¹

This

呢 本 書

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹

This book

呢 本 書 係

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai₋₆

This book is

呢 本 書 係 我 嘅 .

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai₋₆ ngo₋₅ ge⁻³.

This book is mine.

嘢

je₅

Thing

呢 個 嘢

ni⁻¹ go₋₃ je₅

This thing

呢 個 嘢 係 我 嘅。

ni⁻¹ go₋₃ je₅ hai₋₆ ngo₅ ge₋₃.

This thing is mine.

呢

ni⁻¹

This

呢 度

ni⁻¹ dou₋₆

Here

嗰

go⁻²

That

嗰 度

go⁻² dou₋₆

There

我

ngo₅

I

我 係

ngo₅ hai⁻²

I am

我 係 呢 度 .

ngo₅ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₋₆.

I am here.

你

nei₅

You

你 係

nei₅ hai²

You are

你 係 個 度 .

nei₅ hai² go² dou₆.

You are there.

呢

ni⁻¹

This

呢 啲

ni⁻¹ di⁻¹

These

個

go⁻²

That

個 啲

go⁻² di⁻¹

Those

呢

ni⁻¹

This

呢 啲 嘢

ni⁻¹ di⁻¹ je₅

These things

呢 啲 嘢 係

ni⁻¹ di⁻¹ je₅ hai₋₆

These things are

呢 啲 嘢 係 佢 哋 嘅。

ni⁻¹ di⁻¹ je₅ hai₋₆ keoi₅ dei⁻² ge⁻³.

These things are theirs.

我

ngo₅

I

我 本 書

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹

My book

我 本 書 喺

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻²

My book is

我 本 書 喺 呢 度。

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₋₆.

My book is here.

佢 哋

keoi₅ dei⁻²

They

佢 哋 本 書

keoi₅ dei⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹

Their book

佢 哋 本 書 喺

keoi₅ dei⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻²

Their book is

佢 哋 本 書 喺 個 度。

keoi₅ dei⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆.

Their book is there.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Plurality: 啲

If you want to talk about multiple objects of the same type, you can use the 啲 (di⁻¹) classifier.

個啲龍貓有我的書。

go⁻² di⁻¹ lung₄ maau⁻¹ jau₅ ngo₅ di⁻¹ syu⁻¹.

Those Chinchillas have my books.

Ownership: 嘅

In Cantonese, ownership can be expressed with the 嘅 (ge-3) character. This means that the left side “owns” the right side. For example 我嘅爸爸媽媽 (ngo,5 ge-3 baa~4 baa-1 maa~4 maa-1) means **my parents**. However, when the two objects are closely related (like a family member), the 嘅 (ge-3) can be omitted. Thus this will be more natural: 我爸爸媽媽 (ngo,5 baa~4 baa-1 maa~4 maa-1). You can also replace the 嘅 (ge-3) with an equivalent classifier for that type, which will also act as an ownership character as well. The plural classifier 啲 (di-1) can be used when referencing ownership of multiple things as well.

佢嘅媽媽

keoi,5 ge-3 maa~4 maa-1

His mom

佢媽媽

keoi,5 maa~4 maa-1

His mom

我嘅龍貓

ngo,5 ge-3 lung~4 maau-1

My chinchilla

我 隻 龍 貓

ngo₅ zek₃ lung₄ maau⁻¹

My chinchilla

我 嘅 朋 友

ngo₅ ge₃ pang₄ jau₅

My friend

我 啲 朋 友

ngo₅ di⁻¹ pang₄ jau₅

My friends

Location: 喺

When attempting to speak about a location that you need to get information for, or maybe something came from that location, you will tend to use 喺 (hai⁻²) before the specific location. The verb related to that location will be added after. Sometimes an additional location indicator can be placed at the end of the word to give more information regarding the location of the object. We will dive deeper into locations in a later dungeon. However, you can see a sneak peek below:

我 本 書 喺 呢 度 .

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₆.

My book is here.

我 本 書 喺 學 校 度 .

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² hok₆ haau₆ dou₆.

My book is at the school.

我 本 書 喺 學 校 內 面 .

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² hok₆ haau₆ noi₆ min₆.

My book is inside the school.

我 本 書 喺 學 校 前 面 .

ngo₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² hok₆ haau₆ cin₄ min₆.

My book is in front of the school.

Articles (The)

In Cantonese, there isn't really a usage of articles such as the word, "the", in English. However, you could start off the sentence with the corresponding classifier, which will essentially act as such.

個人喺呢度。

go-3 jan-4 hai-2 ni-1 dou-6.

The person is here.

啲書喺嗰度。

di-1 syu-1 hai-2 go-2 dou-6.

The books are over there.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

我朋友有三本書喺呢
度. 嗰啲書唔係我嘅. 呢
啲書係我嘅. 佢哋啲嘢
都喺呢度.

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

我朋友有三本書喺呢
度。嗰啲書唔係我嘅。呢
啲書係我嘅。佢哋啲嘢
都喺呢度。

ngo₅ pang₄ jau₅ jau₅ saam⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₆.
go⁻² di⁻¹ syu⁻¹ m₄ hai₆ ngo₅ ge⁻³. ni⁻¹ di⁻¹ syu⁻¹ hai₆
ngo₅ ge⁻³. keoi₅ dei⁻² di⁻¹ je₅ dou⁻¹ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₆.

My friend has three books over here. Those books are not mine. These books are mine. Their things are also here.



第四任務

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 4

嗰個號碼係乜嘢呀

go⁻² go₋₃ hou₋₆ maa₅ hai₋₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₋₄

What's That Number

零

ling₄

0

一

jat⁻¹

1

二

ji₆

2

三

saam⁻¹

3

四

sei⁻³

4

五

ng⁵

5

六

luk⁻⁶

6

七

cat⁻¹

7

八

baat-3

8

九

gau⁻²

9

十

sap₋₆

10

十一

sap₋₆ jat⁻¹

11

十二

sap₋₆ ji₋₆

12

二十一

ji₋₆ sap₋₆ jat⁻¹

21

三十

saam⁻¹ sap₋₆

30

三十一

saam⁻¹ sap₋₆ jat⁻¹

31

九 十 九

gau⁻² sap₋₆ gau⁻²

99

一 百

jat⁻¹ baak₋₃

100

一 百 零 一

jat⁻¹ baak₋₃ ling₋₄ jat⁻¹

101

一 百 零 九

jat⁻¹ baak₋₃ ling₋₄ gau⁻²

109

一 百 一 十

jat⁻¹ baak-3 jat⁻¹ sap-6

110

一 百 一 十 九

jat⁻¹ baak-3 jat⁻¹ sap-6 gau⁻²

119

一 百 二 十

jat⁻¹ baak-3 ji-6 sap-6

120

一 百 二 十 一

jat⁻¹ baak-3 ji-6 sap-6 jat⁻¹

121

二百

ji₋₆ baak₋₃

200

二百二十二

ji₋₆ baak₋₃ ji₋₆ sap₋₆ ji₋₆

222

九百九十九

gau⁻² baak₋₃ gau⁻² sap₋₆ gau⁻²

999

一千

jat⁻¹ cin⁻¹

1,000

一 千 九 百 九 十 九

jat⁻¹ cin⁻¹ gau⁻² baak⁻³ gau⁻² sap⁻⁶ gau⁻²

1,999

二 千

ji⁻⁶ cin⁻¹

2,000

九 千 九 百 九 十 九

gau⁻² cin⁻¹ gau⁻² baak⁻³ gau⁻² sap⁻⁶ gau⁻²

9,999

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

The Number Two: 二 + 兩

When you are counting numbers in Cantonese, you will use the normal number 二 (ji₋₆), however, if you are speaking about quantities, like if you say 2 Bananas or 2 Chinchillas, you use 兩 (loeng₅) instead.

一, 二, 三

jat⁻¹, ji₋₆, saam⁻¹

1, 2, 3

一隻龍貓, 兩隻龍貓, 三隻龍貓

jat⁻¹ zek₋₃ lung₋₄ maau⁻¹, loeng₅ zek₋₃ lung₋₄ maau⁻¹, saam⁻¹ zek₋₃ lung₋₄ maau⁻¹

1 Chinchilla, 2 Chinchillas, 3 Chinchillas

兩條香蕉

loeng₅ tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

2 Bananas

Twenties and Thirties: 廿 + 卅

In Cantonese, when you hit the twenties and thirties, instead of saying the full number for anything in the twenties or thirties, you can instead use the shorter equivalents. Saying it feels a bit like slurring the words together, creating a nice blend. When saying 20, or 30 specifically, you usually put some sound next to it so it doesn't feel **lonely**. It's fine to use a filler sound for this purpose. When saying the numbers between 1-9, you normally put an ah sound between the 20 and the digit. So twenty three would sound more like jaa₋₆ aa⁻¹ saam⁻³ rather than jaa₋₆ saam⁻³.

二十
ji₋₆ sap₋₆
20

廿
jaa₋₆
20

二十一
ji₋₆ sap₋₆ jat⁻¹
21

廿一
jaa₋₆ aa⁻¹ jat⁻¹
21

三十

saam⁻¹ sap₋₆

30

卅

saa⁻¹

30

三十一

saam⁻¹ sap₋₆ jat⁻¹

31

卅一

saa⁻¹ aa⁻¹ jat⁻¹

31

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

我啲朋友有一百零八本
書。你冇三十六隻貓。個
啲五千五百七十八啲人
係美國人。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

我 啲 朋 友 有 一 百 零 八 本
書 . 你 冇 三 十 六 隻 貓 . 個
啲 五 千 五 百 七 十 八 啲 人
係 美 國 人 .

ngo₅ di⁻¹ pang₄ jau₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ baak₃ ling₄ baat₃ bun⁻²
syu⁻¹. nei₅ mou₅ saam⁻¹ sap₆ luk₆ zek₃ maau⁻¹. go⁻² di⁻¹
ng₅ cin⁻¹ ng₅ baak₃ cat⁻¹ sap₆ baat₃ di⁻¹ jan₄ hai₆
mei₅ gwok₃ jan₄.

***My friends have 108 books. You don't have 36 cats. Those
5,578 people are Americans.***



第五任務

dai₋₆ ng₅ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 5

你鍾唔鍾意呢本書呀

nei₅ zung⁻¹ m₋₄ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ aa₋₄

Do You Like This Book

你

nei,5

You

我

ngo,5

I

你 同 埋 我

nei,5 tung~4 maai~4 ngo,5

You and Me

你 同 我

nei,5 tung~4 ngo,5

You and Me

我

ngo₅

I

我 鍾 意

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji-3

I like

我 鍾 意 你 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji-3 nei₅.

I like you

我 唔 鍾 意 你 .

ngo₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji-3 nei₅.

I don't like you

你

nei₅

You

你 鍾 意

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃

You like

你 鍾 意 呢 本 書 .

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

You like this book

你 鍾 唔 鍾 意 呢 本 書 ?

nei₅ zung⁻¹ m₋₄ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Do you like this book?

鍾意。我鍾意呢本書。

zung⁻¹ ji-3. ngo,5 zung⁻¹ ji-3 ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

Yes. I like this book.

唔鍾意。我唔鍾意呢本書。

m₋₄ zung⁻¹ ji-3. ngo,5 m₋₄ zung⁻¹ ji-3 ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

No. I don't like this book.

兩個

loeng₅ go₋₃

Two

兩個都

loeng₅ go₋₃ dou⁻¹

Both of them

我鍾意兩個都。

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ loeng₅ go₋₃ dou⁻¹.

I like both of them.

我兩個都鍾意。

ngo₅ loeng₅ go₋₃ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃.

I like both of them.

呢 本 書

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹

This book

嗰 本 書

go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹

That book

呢 本 書 定 係 嗰 本 書 ？

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ ding₋₆ hai₋₆ go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

This book or that book?

你 鍾 唔 鍾 意 呢 本 書 定 係
嗰 本 書 ？

nei₋₅ zung⁻¹ m₋₄ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ ding₋₆ hai₋₆
go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Do you like this book or that book?

呢 本 書

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹

This book

嗰 本 書

go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹

That book

呢 本 書 或 者 嗰 本 書 .

ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ waak₆ ze⁻² go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

This book or that book.

我 鍾 意 呢 本 書 或 者 嗰 本
書 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ waak₆ ze⁻² go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I like this book or that book.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Some Usages Of: 都

The character 都 (dou⁻¹) can be used to mean **also**, or it can be used to refer to all of the stuff in the list of items we have just mentioned, which can also be considered as a way of emphasize them.

我都鍾意佢哋。

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji-3 keoi₅ dei⁻².

I also like them.

我都鍾意佢哋都。

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji-3 keoi₅ dei⁻² dou⁻¹.

I also like them all.

The Different Words For: Or: 定係 + 或者

There are two different **Or** words in Cantonese, each needs to be used in the appropriate situation. The rule of thumb is that if you are asking a question, you use 定係 (ding₋₆ hai₋₆), and if you are using it in a statement, you use 或者 (waak₋₆ ze⁻²).

你鍾意芒果定係香蕉？

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji-3 mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² ding₋₆ hai₋₆ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹?

Do you like Mangos or Bananas?

我兩個都鍾意。芒果或者香蕉。

ngo₅ loeng₅ go-3 dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji-3. mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² waak₋₆ ze⁻² hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹.

I like both of them. Mangos or Bananas.

The Ten Heavenly Stems and Twelve Earthly Branches: 天干地支

The Ten Heavenly Stems³, 天干 (tin⁻¹ gon⁻¹), and **The Twelve Earthly Branches**⁴, 地支 (dei₋₆ zi⁻¹), are part of an Ancient Chinese counting system that were originally used for keeping track of time. Throughout your adventure, you will start seeing these symbols in places where we would want to list things in a **A, B, C** type of pattern. For example **Person A** and **Person B**. You don't need to memorize these, but don't be surprised when you start seeing them.

甲 乙 丙 丁 戊 己 庚 辛 壬 癸

gaap⁻³ jyut⁻³ bing⁻² ding⁻¹ mou₋₆ gei⁻² gang⁻¹ san⁻¹ jam₋₄ gwai⁻³

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J

子 丑 寅 卯 辰 巳 午 未 申 酉 戌
亥

zi⁻² cau⁻² jan₋₄ maau₋₅ san₋₄ zi₋₆ ng₋₅ mei₋₆ san⁻¹ zau₋₅ seot⁻¹ hoi₋₆

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12

³https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heavenly_Stems

⁴https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earthly_Branches

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你朋友鍾唔鐘意呢本書？

乙

唔鐘意。佢唔鐘意呢本書。
書。佢鍾意嗰本書。

甲

我都鍾意嗰本書。我有
呢本書或者嗰本書。

乙

我有兩個都，鍾意兩個
都。你鍾意呢本書定係
嗰本書？

甲

我都鍾意兩個都。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你 朋 友 鍾 唔 鐘 意 呢 本
書 ？

nei₅ pang₄ jau₅ zung⁻¹ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Does your friend like this book?

乙

唔 鍾 意 . 佢 唔 鍾 意 呢 本
書 . 佢 鍾 意 個 本 書 .

m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃. keoi₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

keoi₅ zung⁻¹ ji₃ go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

No. He doesn't like this book. He likes that book.

甲

我都鍾意嗰本書。我有
呢本書或者嗰本書。

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹. ngo₅ mou₅ ni⁻¹
bun⁻² syu⁻¹ waak₆ ze⁻² go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I also like that book. I don't have this book or that book.

乙

我有兩個都，鍾意兩個
都。你鍾意呢本書定係
嗰本書？

ngo₅ jau₅ loeng₅ go₋₃ dou⁻¹, zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ loeng₅ go₋₃
dou⁻¹. nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ ding₋₆ hai₋₆ go⁻²
bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

***I have both of them, and like both of them. Do you like this
book or that book?***

甲

我都鍾意兩個都。

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji-₃ loeng₅ go-₃ dou⁻¹.

I also like both of them.



第六任務

dai₆ luk₆ jam₆ mou₆

Quest 6

我有錢啊

ngo₅ mou₅ cin₄ aa₃

I Don't Have Money

我有

ngo₅ jau₅

I have

我有五本書。

ngo₅ jau₅ ng₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I have 5 books

我有五本書但係

ngo₅ jau₅ ng₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ daan₋₆ hai₋₆

I have 5 books but

我有五本書但係我唔鍾
意佢哋。

ngo₅ jau₅ ng₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ngo₅ m₋₄ zung⁻¹

ji₋₃ keoi₅ dei⁻².

I have 5 books but I don't like them

好

hou²

Good

好 好

hou² hou²

Very good

靚

leng-3

Beautiful

好 靚

hou⁻² leng-3

Very beautiful

你 好 靚 .

nei₅ hou⁻² leng-3.

You are very beautiful

幾

gei⁻²

How many

多

do⁻¹

Many

幾 多

gei⁻² do⁻¹

How many

錢

cin₋₄

Money

幾 多 錢 ?
gei⁻² do⁻¹ cin^{-2?}

How much money? (How much does it cost?)

一

jat⁻¹

1

一 蚊

jat⁻¹ man⁻¹

1 dollar (your local currency)

我 有 一 蚊。

ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ man⁻¹.

I have 1 dollar.

我 有 十 五 蚊。

ngo₅ jau₅ sap₋₆ ng₅ man⁻¹.

I have 15 dollars.

你有

nei₅ jau₅

You have

你有幾多錢？

nei₅ jau₅ gei⁻² do⁻¹ cin⁻²?

How much money do you have?

我有十蚊。你呢？

ngo₅ jau₅ sap₋₆ man⁻¹. nei₅ ne⁻¹?

I have 10 dollars. What about you?

我有錢。

ngo₅ mou₅ cin₋₄.

I don't have money.

呢 啲 錢 呢？

ni⁻¹ di⁻¹ cin_{~4} ne^{-1?}

What about this money?

個 啲 錢 唔 係 我 嘅。

go⁻² di⁻¹ cin_{~4} m_{~4} hai₋₆ ngo_{~5} ge⁻³.

That money isn't mine.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Different Pronunciations Of: 呢

In Cantonese, there can be identical characters that have different pronunciations depending on the situation, as we experienced with 呢 (ne⁻¹).

呢 個 人 好 靚 .

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ jan⁻⁴ hou⁻² leng⁻³.

This person is beautiful.

你 呢 ?

nei⁻⁵ ne^{-1?}

What about you?

呢 個 呢 ?

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ ne^{-1?}

What about this?

Tonal Changes: 錢

In Cantonese, there are some situations where a character's tone will change. In the encounter we saw previously, the money character normally has the fourth tone: 錢 (cin₄), but when we use it to ask how much, it changes to the second tone: 錢 (cin²).

錢
cin₄
Money

幾 多 錢?
gei² do⁻¹ cin²?
How much does it cost?

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你係唔係學生？

乙

我唔係學生。你呢？

甲

我都唔係學生但係我朋友係學生。

乙

我有好多學生啲朋友。

佢哋都係好人。

甲

好。你有幾多個朋友？

乙

我有一百個朋友。

甲

你有好多朋友。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你 係 唔 係 學 生 ？

nei₅ hai₆ m₄ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹?

Are you a student?

乙

我 唔 係 學 生 . 你 呢 ？

ngo₅ m₄ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹. nei₅ ni⁻¹?

I'm not a student. What about you?

甲

我都唔係學生但係我朋友係學生。

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ m₄ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹ daan₆ hai₆ ngo₅ pang₄
jau₅ hai₆ hok₆ saang⁻¹.

I'm also not a student, but my friend is a student.

乙

我有好多學生啲朋友。
佢哋都係好人。

ngo₅ jau₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹ hok₆ saang⁻¹ di⁻¹ pang₄ jau₅ keoi₅
dei⁻² dou⁻¹ hai₆ hou⁻² jan₄.

I have a lot of friends that are students. They are all good people.

甲

好。你有幾多個朋友？

hou⁻². nei₅ jau₅ gei⁻² do⁻¹ go⁻³ pang₄ jau₅?

Good. How many friends do you have?

乙

我有一百個朋友。

ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ baak⁻³ go⁻³ pang₄ jau₅.

I have 100 friends.

甲

你 有 好 多 朋 友 。

nei₅ jau₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹ pang₄ jau₅.

You have a lot of friends.



第二幕

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ mok₋₆

Act 2

毒沙漠

duk₋₆ saa⁻¹ mok₋₆

Poisonous Desert

第一任務

dai₋₆ jat⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 1

你係唔係食緊芒果

nei₋₅ hai₋₆ m₋₄ hai₋₆ sik₋₆ gan⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²

Are You Eating A Mango

你

nei₅

You

你 食

nei₅ sik₆

You eat

你 食 緊

nei₅ sik₆ gan⁻²

You are eating

你 食 緊 芒 果 .

nei₅ sik₆ gan⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

You are eating a mango.

你 係 唔 係 食 緊 芒 果 ？

nei₅ hai₆ m₄ hai₆ sik₆ gan⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²?

Are you eating a mango?

我 食 緊 芒 果 。

ngo₅ sik₆ gan⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I'm eating a mango.

我

ngo₅

I

我 食

ngo₅ sik₆

I eat

我 食 咗

ngo₅ sik₆ zo⁻²

I ate

我 食 咗 芒 果 .

ngo₅ sik₆ zo⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I ate a mango.

我

ngo₅

I

我 會

ngo₅ wui₅

I will

我 會 食

ngo₅ wui₅ sik₆

I will eat

我 會 食 芒 果 .

ngo₅ wui₅ sik₆ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I will eat (a) mango(s).

你

nei₅

You

你 食

nei₅ sik₆

You eat

你 食 到

nei₅ sik₆ dou⁻²

You were able to

你 食 到 芒 果 .

nei₅ sik₆ dou⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

You were able to eat (a) mango(s).

你食唔到芒果。

nei₅ sik₆ m₄ dou⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

You weren't able to eat (a) mango(s).

你 食 唔 食 到 芒 果 ？

nei₅ sik₆ m₄ sik₆ dou⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²?

Were you able to eat the mango(s)?

食 到 ． 我 食 到 芒 果 ．

sik₆ dou⁻². ngo₅ sik₆ dou⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

Yes. I was able to eat the mango(s).

食 唔 到 ． 我 食 唔 到 芒 果 ．

sik₆ m₄ dou⁻². ngo₅ sik₆ m₄ dou⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

No. I wasn't able to eat the mango(s)

如 果

jyu₄ gwo⁻²

If

如 果 我 食 到 我 嘅 芒 果

jyu₄ gwo⁻² ngo₅ sik₆ dou⁻² ngo₅ ge₃ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²

If I'm able to eat my mango

如 果 我 食 到 我 嘅 芒 果 ，
我 會 食 你 嘅 芒 果 。

jyu₄ gwo⁻² ngo₅ sik₆ dou⁻² ngo₅ ge₃ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻², ngo₅
wui₅ sik₆ nei₅ ge₃ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

If I'm able to eat my mango, I will eat your mango.

我

ngo₅

I

我 而 家

ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹

I now

我 而 家 會

ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅

I now will

我 而 家 會 去

ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅ heoi₋₃

I now will go

我 而 家 會 去 個 度 .
ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅ heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I now will go there.

我

ngo,5

I

我 睇

ngo,5 tai⁻²

I read

我 睇 咗

ngo,5 tai⁻² zo⁻²

I read (past)

我 睇 咗 我 本 書 .

ngo,5 tai⁻² zo⁻² ngo,5 bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I read my book.

我睇咗我紐約本書。

ngo₅ tai⁻² zo⁻² ngo₅ nau⁻² joek₋₃ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I read my New York book.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Past, Present, And Future Tense: 咗 + 緊 + 會

One of the nice benefits of Cantonese is that it has no conjugations. This means that representing the past, present, and future can be easily done by simply adding a character before or after the verb, thus the verb character itself stays exactly the same everywhere, forever. As in any natural language, there are some verbs that cannot use these tense characters directly, but we will learn more about this in the future.

我睇咗佢本書。

ngo₅ tai⁻² zo⁻² keoi₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I finished reading her book.

我睇緊佢本書。

ngo₅ tai⁻² gan⁻² keoi₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I am reading her book.

我會睇佢本書。

ngo₅ wui₅ tai⁻² keoi₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I will read her book.

Inquiring About What Someone Is Currently Doing: 係

In order to ask someone about something they are currently doing, you can use the verb 係 (hai₋₆). Essentially asking them if they are or are not currently doing said action.

你係唔係去緊個度？

nei₅ hai₋₆ m₋₄ hai₋₆ heoi₋₃ gan⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆?

Are you currently going over there?

係。我去緊個度。

hai₋₆ ngo₅ heoi₋₃ gan⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆.

Yes. I'm going over there.

唔係。我睇緊書。

m₋₄ hai₋₆ ngo₅ tai⁻² gan⁻² syu⁻¹.

No. I'm reading a book.

Successfully Completing Or Failing An Action: 到

If you want to express that an action that was taken was successful, you place the 到 (dou⁻²) character after the verb, if the action failed, you place 唔 到 (m₄ dou⁻²) after the verb.

你 睇 唔 睇 到 佢 本 書 ？

nei₅ tai⁻² m₄ tai⁻² dou⁻² keoi₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Were you able to read his book?

睇 到 . 我 睇 到 佢 本 書 .

tai⁻² dou⁻². ngo₅ tai⁻² dou⁻² keoi₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

Yes. I was able to read his book.

睇 唔 到 . 我 睇 唔 到 佢 本 書 .

tai⁻² m₄ dou⁻². ngo₅ tai⁻² m₄ dou⁻² keoi₅ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

No. I wasn't able to read his book.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你而家係唔係睇緊呢本
書？

乙

唔係。我而家食緊香蕉。
你呢？

甲

我而家會去嗰度但係我
冇錢。如果我有錢我會
去紐約。

乙

我鍾意紐約。我啲朋友
都係紐約人。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你而家係唔係睇緊呢本書？

nei₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ hai₆ m₄ hai₆ tai⁻² gan⁻² ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Are you reading this book at the moment?

乙

唔係。我而家食緊香蕉。
你呢？

m₄ hai₆ ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ sik₆ gan⁻² hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹. nei₅ ni⁻¹?

No. I'm currently eating a banana. What about you?

甲

我而家會去嗰度但係我
冇錢。如果我有錢我會
去紐約。

ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅ heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ngo₅
mou₅ cin₋₄ jyu₋₄ gwo⁻² ngo₅ jau₅ cin₋₄ ngo₅ wui₅ heoi₋₃
nau⁻² joek₋₃.

***I'm going over there now but I don't have money. If I had
money I would go to New York.***

乙

我鍾意紐約。我啲朋友
都係紐約人。

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ nau⁻² joek₋₃. ngo₅ di⁻¹ pang₋₄ jau₅ dou⁻¹
hai₋₆ nau⁻² joek₋₃ jan₋₄.

I like New York. My friends are all New Yorkers.



第二任務

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 2

你 喺 邊 度 呀

nei_{,5} hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆ aa₋₄

Where Are You

你

nei₅

You

你 係

nei₅ hai⁻²

You are (located)

你 係 邊 度？

nei₅ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Where are you?

我 係 屋 企。

ngo₅ hai⁻² uk⁻¹ kei⁻².

I am home.

一 樽

jat⁻¹ zeon⁻¹

One bottle

一 樽 水

jat⁻¹ zeon⁻¹ seoi⁻²

One bottle of water

我 樽 水

ngo₅ zeon⁻¹ seoi⁻²

My bottle of water

我 樽 水 喺 邊 度？

ngo₅ zeon⁻¹ seoi⁻² hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆?

Where is my bottle of water?

我 嘅 樽 喺 邊 度？

ngo₅ ge₃ zeon⁻¹ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Where is my bottle?

我

ngo,5

I

我 想

ngo,5 soeng⁻²

I want to

我 想 睇

ngo,5 soeng⁻² tai⁻²

I want to read

我 想 睇 一 本 書 .

ngo,5 soeng⁻² tai⁻² jat⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I want to read a book.

我

ngo₅

I

我 飲

ngo₅ jam⁻²

I drink

我 飲 緊 一 杯

ngo₅ jam⁻² gan⁻² jat⁻¹ bui⁻¹

I'm drinking a cup

我 飲 緊 一 杯 茶。

ngo₅ jam⁻² gan⁻² jat⁻¹ bui⁻¹ caa₄.

I'm drinking a cup of tea.

我 飲 緊 茶 .

ngo˥ jam˨˨ gan˨˨ caa˨˨˥.

I'm drinking tea.

我

ngo₅

I

我 鍾 意

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃

I like

我 鍾 意 飲 茶 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² caa₋₄.

I like to drink tea.

我 鍾 意

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃

I like

我 鍾 意 啲 啲

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ go⁻² di⁻¹

I like those

我 鍾 意 啲 啲 兩 杯 茶。

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ go⁻² di⁻¹ loeng₅ bui⁻¹ caa₋₄.

I like those two cups.

我 好 鍾 意 飲 茶。

ngo₅ hou⁻² zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² caa₋₄.

I really like drinking tea.

我好鍾意飲好多茶。

ngo₅ hou⁻² zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² hou⁻² do⁻¹ caa₋₄.

I really like drinking a lot of tea.

我 鍾 意 飲 果 汁 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² gwo⁻² zap⁻¹.

I like to drink juice.

我 鍾 意 飲 橙 汁 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² caang⁻² zap⁻¹.

I like to drink orange juice.

我 鍾 意 飲 蘋 果 汁 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² ping_{~4} gwo⁻² zap⁻¹.

I like to drink apple juice.

邊 個

bin⁻¹ go⁻³

Who / Which

你 鍾 意 飲 邊 個

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ jam⁻² bin⁻¹ go⁻³

You like to drink which

你 鍾 意 飲 邊 個 果 汁？ 蘋
果 汁 定 係 橙 汁？

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ jam⁻² bin⁻¹ go⁻³ gwo⁻² zap⁻¹? ping₄ gwo⁻²
zap⁻¹ ding₆ hai₆ caang⁻² zap⁻¹?

You like to drink which juice?

我 鍾 意 飲 蘋 果 汁。

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ jam⁻² ping₄ gwo⁻² zap⁻¹.

I like to drink apple juice.

我

ngo₅

I

我 同 意 .

ngo₅ tung₄ ji₃.

I agree.

我 唔 同 意 .

ngo₅ m₄ tung₄ ji₃.

I don't agree.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Using Multiple Verbs Together

If you want to use multiple verbs together, you simply need to put the verbs next to each other.

我 鍾 意 飲 水 .

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² seoi⁻².

I like to drink water.

我 想 去 嗰 度 .

ngo₅ soeng⁻² heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I want to go there.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你朋友喺邊度？

乙

我朋友喺佢屋企。你呢？

甲

我都喺屋企。而家飲緊
一杯茶。你呢？

乙

我睇緊書。我都想飲嘢
但係唔鍾意飲茶。我會
飲果汁。

甲

好

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你朋友喺邊度？

nei₅ pang₄ jau₅ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Where is your friend?

乙

我朋友喺佢屋企。你呢？

ngo₅ pang₄ jau₅ hai⁻² keoi₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻². nei₅ ne⁻¹?

My friend is at his house. What about you?

甲

我 都 喺 屋 企 . 而 家 飲 緊
一 杯 茶 . 你 呢 ?

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ hai⁻² uk⁻¹ kei⁻² . ji₄ gaa⁻¹ jam⁻² gan⁻² jat⁻¹
bui⁻¹ caa₄ . nei₅ ne⁻¹?

I'm also at home. Drinking a cup of tea. What about you?

乙

我睇緊書。我都想飲嘢
但係唔鍾意飲茶。我會
飲果汁。

ngo₅ tai⁻² gan⁻² syu⁻¹. ngo₅ dou⁻¹ soeng⁻² jam⁻² je₅
daan₋₆ hai₋₆ m₋₄ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² caa₋₄. ngo₅ wui₅ jam⁻²
gwo⁻² zap⁻¹.

***I'm reading a book. I also want to drink something, but I don't
like to drink tea. I will drink juice.***

甲

好

hou²

Good



第三任務

dai₋₆ saam⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 3

呢個係我爸爸媽媽

ni⁻¹ go₋₃ hai₋₆ ngo₋₅ baa₋₄ baa⁻¹ maa₋₄ maa⁻¹

These Are My Parents

屋 企

uk⁻¹ kei⁻²

Home

屋 企 人

uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan_{~4}

Family / Family Member

爸爸

baa_{~4} baa⁻¹

Father

媽媽

maa_{~4} maa⁻¹

Mother

爸爸媽媽

baa_{~4} baa⁻¹ maa_{~4} maa⁻¹

Parents

哥哥

go_{~4} go⁻¹

Older Brother

姐姐

ze_{~4} ze⁻¹

Older Sister

細佬

sai₋₃ lou⁻²

Younger Brother

細妹

sai₋₃ mui⁻²

Younger Sister

兄弟

hing⁻¹ dai₋₆

Brothers

姊妹

zi⁻² mui₋₆

Sisters

兄弟姊妹

hing⁻¹ dai₋₆ zi⁻² mui₋₆

Siblings

呢個人係邊個？

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ jan₋₄ hai₋₆ bin⁻¹ go^{-3?}

Who is this person?

呢個係我爸爸。

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ hai₋₆ ngo₋₅ baa₋₄ baa⁻¹.

This is my Father.

嗰啲人係邊個？

go⁻² di⁻¹ jan₋₄ hai₋₆ bin⁻¹ go^{-3?}

Who are those people?

嗰啲係我爸爸媽媽。佢
哋係我屋企人。

go⁻² di⁻¹ hai₋₆ ngo₋₅ baa₋₄ baa⁻¹ maa₋₄ maa⁻¹. keoi₋₅ dei⁻²
hai₋₆ ngo₋₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan₋₄.

Those are my parents. They are my family.

你 屋 企 人

nei₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan₄

Your family

你 屋 企 人 住

nei₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan₄ zyu₆

Your family lives

你 屋 企 人 住 喺 邊 度？

nei₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan₄ zyu₆ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Where does your family live?

佢 哋 住 喺 美 國。

keoi₅ dei⁻² zyu₆ hai⁻² mei₅ gwok⁻³.

They live in the United States.

你有冇兄弟姊妹？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ hing⁻¹ dai₆ zi⁻² mui₆?

Do you have siblings?

有。我有一個細佬，一個
細妹。你呢？

jau₅. ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ go₃ sai₃ lou⁻², jat⁻¹ go₃ sai₃
mui⁻². nei₅ ne⁻¹?

Yes. I have a younger brother and a younger sister. What about you?

冇。我有兄弟姊妹但係
我有一隻貓。

mou₅. ngo₅ mou₅ hing⁻¹ dai₆ zi⁻² mui₆ daan₆ hai₆ ngo₅
jau₅ jat⁻¹ zek₃ maau⁻¹.

No. I don't have siblings but I have a cat.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Family Hierarchy

In Cantonese, every family member in the family tree has a specific name, meaning that there are specific names for each member in both sides of the family. For now we will only focus on the ones mentioned in this quest. In addition, the family tree is hierarchical. So Males before Females, Older before Younger.

爸爸

baa₄ baa⁻¹

Father

媽媽

maa₄ maa⁻¹

Mother

哥哥

go₄ go⁻¹

Older Brother

姐 姐

ze₄ ze⁻¹

Older Sister

細 佬

sai₃ lou⁻²

Younger Brother

細 妹

sai₃ mui⁻²

Younger Sister

Switching The Word Placement Of: 住

When using the word 住 (zyu₋₆), it can be placed either before 喺 (hai⁻²) or it can be placed at the end of the sentence.

你 住 喺 邊 度？

nei_{,5} zyu₋₆ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆?

Where do you live?

你 喺 邊 度 住？

nei_{,5} hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆ zyu₋₆?

Where do you live?

我 住 喺 呢 度。

ngo_{,5} zyu₋₆ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₋₆.

I live here.

我 喺 呢 度 住。

ngo_{,5} hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₋₆ zyu₋₆.

I live here.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我爸爸好鍾意飲茶但係
我想佢飲水。

乙

我爸爸都唔鍾意飲水但
係我媽媽飲好多水。

甲

好好. 你爸爸媽媽喺邊
度?

乙

佢哋兩個都喺屋企. 你
嘅呢?

甲

佢哋而家喺學校.

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我爸爸好鍾意飲茶但係
我想佢飲水。

ngo₅ baa₄ baa⁻¹ hou⁻² zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² caa₄ daan₆ hai₆
ngo₅ soeng⁻² keoi₅ jam⁻² sei⁻².

My Dad really likes to drink tea, but I want him to drink water.

乙

我爸爸都唔鍾意飲水但
係我媽媽飲好多水。

ngo₅ baa₄ baa⁻¹ dou⁻¹ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ jam⁻² sei⁻² daan₆
hai₆ ngo₅ maa₄ maa⁻¹ jam⁻² hou⁻² do⁻¹ sei⁻².

***My Dad also doesn't like to drink water, but my Mom drinks
a lot of water.***

甲

好好。你爸爸媽媽喺邊
度？

hou⁻² hou⁻². nei₅ baa₄ baa⁻¹ maa₄ maa⁻¹ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Very good. Where are your parents?

乙

佢哋兩個都喺屋企。你
嘅呢？

keoi₅ dei⁻² loeng₅ go⁻³ dou⁻¹ hai⁻² uk⁻¹ kei⁻². nei₅ ge⁻³ ne⁻¹?

They are both at home. What about yours?

甲

佢哋而家喺學校。

keoi₅ dei² ji₄ gaa¹ hai² hok₆ haau₆.

They are currently at the school.



第四任務

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 4

你要搭的士定係巴士

nei₅ jiu₋₃ daap₋₃ dik⁻¹ si⁻² ding₋₆ hai₋₆ baa⁻¹ si⁻²

You Need To Take The Taxi Or Bus

車

ce⁻¹

Car

一架車

jat⁻¹ gaa-3 ce⁻¹

A car

一架巴士

jat⁻¹ gaa-3 baa⁻¹ si⁻²

A bus

一架的士

jat⁻¹ gaa-3 dik⁻¹ si⁻²

A taxi

佢 架 的 士 去 個 度 .

keoi₅ gaa₃ dik⁻¹ si⁻² heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆.

His taxi goes there.

我要搭的士。

ngo₅ jiu₃ daap₃ dik⁻¹ si⁻².

I need to take a taxi.

我要搭地鐵。

ngo₅ jiu₃ daap₃ dei₆ tit₃.

I need to take the train (underground train).

飛

fei⁻¹

To fly

機

gei⁻¹

Machine

飛 機

fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹

Airplane (Flying Machine)

佢 要 搭 飛 機 .

keoi₅ jiu⁻³ daap⁻³ fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹.

She needs to take an airplane.

佢要搭飛機去香港。

keoi₅ jiu₃ daap₃ fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹ heoi₃ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻².

She needs to take an airplane to go to Hong Kong.

我 哋 要 搭

ngo₅ dei⁻² jiu⁻³ daap⁻³

We need to take

我 哋 要 搭 巴 士。

ngo₅ dei⁻² jiu⁻³ daap⁻³ baa⁻¹ si⁻².

We need to take a bus.

我 哋 要 搭 巴 士 去 朋 友 嘅
屋 企。

ngo₅ dei⁻² jiu⁻³ daap⁻³ baa⁻¹ si⁻² heoi⁻³ pang₄ jau₅ ge⁻³
uk⁻¹ kei⁻².

We need to take a bus to go to our friend's house.

站

zaam₋₆

Station

地鐵站

dei₋₆ tit₋₃ zaam₋₆

Train Station

巴士站

baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆

Bus Stop

街

gai¹

Street

一條街

jat¹ tiu₄ gai¹

A street

呢條街

ni¹ tiu₄ gai¹

This street

呢條街冇地鐵站。

ni¹ tiu₄ gai¹ mou₅ dei₆ tit₃ zaam₆.

This street doesn't have a train station.

我會去。

ngo₅ wui₅ heoi₋₃.

I will go

我會去巴士站。

ngo₅ wui₅ heoi₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆.

I will go to the bus stop.

我會去巴士站搭巴士。

ngo₅ wui₅ heoi₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆ daap₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻².

I will go to the bus stop to take the bus.

我會去巴士站搭巴士去
朋友嘅屋企。

ngo₅ wui₅ heoi₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆ daap₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² heoi₋₃
pang₋₄ jau₅ ge₋₃ uk⁻¹ kei⁻².

I will go to the bus stop to take the bus to go to my friend's house.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Using English In Hong Kong Cantonese

Since Hong Kong was a British Colony for about 100 years, there were a lot of English words that trickled into Cantonese, and were absorbed into the language with a Cantonese pronunciation. Some of these words don't have a corresponding Chinese equivalent character, and thus the Latin alphabet is used in these cases. Even though they are written with the Latin Alphabet, you'll still need to pronounce them with the Cantonese accent for it to be correct, or it won't be colloquial. Due to these historical developments, there are differences between Guangdong 廣東 (gwong⁻² dung⁻¹) Cantonese, and Hong Kong 香港 (hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻²) Cantonese, not just for some basic objects, but also in terms of slang. However, the two different Cantonese variants are still largely mutually intelligible. Below are some examples from the Hong Kong Cantonese perspective:

雲 呢 拿

wan₆ nei⁻¹ laa⁻²

Vanilla

士 多 啤 梨

si₆ do⁻¹ be⁻¹ lei⁻²

Strawberry

朱 古 力

zyu⁻¹ gu⁻¹ lik⁻¹

Chocolate

的士

dik⁻¹ si⁻²

Taxi

巴士

baa⁻¹ si⁻²

Bus

多士

do⁻¹ si⁻²

Toast

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你而家會去邊度？

乙

我而家會去哥哥嘅屋
企。

甲

你會唔會搭的士去個
度？

乙

唔會。我會搭地鐵去個
度。

甲

佢住喺邊度？

乙

佢住喺九十五街。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你 而 家 會 去 邊 度？

nei₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅ heoi₃ bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Where are you going now?

乙

我 而 家 會 去 哥 哥 嘅 屋
企。

ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅ heoi₃ go₄ go⁻¹ ge₃ uk⁻¹ kei⁻².

I'm going to my older brother's house now.

甲

你 會 唔 會 搭 的 士 去 個
度 ？

nei₅ wui₅ m₄ wui₅ daap₃ dik⁻¹ si⁻² heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆?

Are you going to take the taxi to go there?

乙

唔 會 . 我 會 搭 地 鐵 去 個
度 .

m₄ wui₅ ngo₅ wui₅ daap₃ dei₆ tit₃ heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆.

No. I'm going to take the train to go there.

甲

佢住喺邊度？

keoi₅ zyu₆ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆?

Where does he live?

乙

佢住喺九十五街。

keoi₅ zyu₆ hai⁻² gau⁻² sap₆ ng₅ gaai⁻¹.

He lives on 95th street.



第五任務

dai₋₆ ng₅ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 5

佢而家做緊乜嘢呀

keoi₅ ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ zou₋₆ gan⁻² mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₋₄

What Is He Doing Now

呢 個

ni⁻¹ go⁻³

This

呢 個 係

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ hai₋₆

This is

呢 個 係 乜 嘢 呀？

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ hai₋₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₋₄?

What is this?

呢 個 係 咩 呀？

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ hai₋₆ me⁻¹ aa₋₄?

What is this?

你

nei₅

You

你做

nei₅ zou₆

You do

你做乜嘢呀？

nei₅ zou₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₄?

What are you doing?

你做緊乜嘢呀？

nei₅ zou₆ gan⁻² mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₄?

What are you currently doing?

你做緊咩？

nei₅ zou₆ gan² me⁻¹?

What are you currently doing? (harsher tone)

你做緊咩呀？

nei₅ zou₆ gan² me⁻¹ aa₄?

What are you currently doing? (a little softer)

你做緊乜嘢呀？

nei₅ zou₆ gan² mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₄?

What are you currently doing? (softest)

咩

me⁻¹

(Ending Particle: Shows sarcasm or being surprised)

係咩?

hai₋₆ me⁻¹?

Really?

如 果

jyu₄ gwo⁻²

If

如 果 你 唔 鍾 意

jyu₄ gwo⁻² nei₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃

If you don't like

如 果 你 唔 鍾 意 飲 水

jyu₄ gwo⁻² nei₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ jam⁻² sei⁻²

If you don't like drinking water

如 果 你 唔 鍾 意 飲 水 就

jyu₄ gwo⁻² nei₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ jam⁻² sei⁻² zau₆

If you don't like drinking water then

如果你唔鍾意飲水就飲
茶。

jyu₄ gwo⁻² nei₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ jam⁻² sei⁻² zau₆ jam⁻² caa₄.

If you don't like drinking water then drink tea.

我 睇

ngo₅ tai⁻²

I read

我 睇 書 .

ngo₅ tai⁻² syu⁻¹.

I read a book.

我 睇 書 ， 你 就 都 睇 書 .

ngo₅ tai⁻² syu⁻¹, nei₅ zau₋₆ dou⁻¹ tai⁻² syu⁻¹.

As soon as I read a book, you also read a book.

點 解

dim⁻² gaai⁻²

Why

點 解 你 要 搭 飛 機 去 韓
國 ？

dim⁻² gaai⁻² nei₅ jiu⁻³ daap⁻³ fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹ heoi⁻³ hon₄ gwok⁻³?

Why do you need to take an airplane to go to Korea?

因為

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆

Because

因為我要去韓國

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆ ngo₅ jiu₋₃ heoi₋₃ hon₋₄ gwok₋₃

Because I need to go to Korea

因為我要去韓國探朋友。

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆ ngo₅ jiu₋₃ heoi₋₃ hon₋₄ gwok₋₃ taam₋₃ pang₋₄ jau₅.

Because I need to go to Korea to visit friends.

我 哋

ngo₅ dei⁻²

We

我 哋 一 齊

ngo₅ dei⁻² jat⁻¹ cai₄

Together we

我 哋 一 齊 去 韓 國 探 朋
友。

ngo₅ dei⁻² jat⁻¹ cai₄ heoi⁻³ hon₄ gwok⁻³ taam⁻³ pang₄ jau₅.

Together we go to Korea to visit friends.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Ending Particles: 呀 + 咩

One of the most unique and flavorful parts of Cantonese is its wide use of Ending Particles. These particles are added to the end of a statement, and tend to express some sort of additional meaning or tone of the sentence/speaker. I almost like to think of these as some sort of enhanced punctuation system. One that goes deeper than a simple question mark or exclamation mark (?, !). This system allows for deeper feelings, tones, and emotions to be written down **on paper**, and to some extent recorded and expressed **in writing**. You can usually say the same thing without the ending particles, but the sentence may sound dryer and more abrupt. The ending particles can help to soften or **lighten up** the sentence. They can also be used to make the sentence sound stronger or more intense as well. You will be introduced to more ending particles in the future. But for now we can discuss two of them: 呀 (aa~4) and 咩 (me~1). At a basic level, 呀 (aa~4) can be used when you are asking any question. 咩 (me~1) is sometimes used when you are surprised about something and want to express that further. It can also be used in a sarcastic way.

你 係 唔 係 一 隻 龍 貓 呀 ?

nei~5 hai~6 m~4 hai~6 jat~1 zek~3 lung~4 maau~1 aa~4?

Are you a Chinchilla?

係 . 我 係 一 隻 龍 貓 .

hai~6 ngo~5 hai~6 jat~1 zek~3 lung~4 maau~1.

Yes. I'm a Chinchilla.

係 咩 ?!

hai~6 me~1?!

Really?!

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你哥哥鍾意做乜嘢呀？

乙

佢鍾意睇書。佢都鍾意
食香蕉。

甲

係咩？我都鍾意食香蕉，
但係你鍾意做乜嘢呀？

乙

我鍾意睇書。我同朋友
一齊睇書。

甲

你哋睇緊邊本書？

乙

我哋睇緊龍貓嘅書。

甲

你哋點解鐘意睇龍貓嘅
書？

乙

我哋鐘意龍貓嘅書因為
我哋好鍾意龍貓。

甲

我都鍾意龍貓嘅書。我

就想睇你哋嘅書。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你 哥 哥 鍾 意 做 乜 嘢 呀？

nei₅ go₄ go⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji₃ zou₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₄?

What does your older brother like to do?

乙

佢 鍾 意 睇 書。佢 都 鍾 意
食 香 蕉。

keoi₅ zung⁻¹ ji₃ tai⁻² syu⁻¹. keoi₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji₃ sik₆
hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹.

He likes to read books. He also likes to eat bananas.

甲

係咩？我都鍾意食香蕉，
但係你鍾意做乜嘢呀？

hai₋₆ me⁻¹? ngo₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ sik₋₆ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹, daan₋₆
hai₋₆ nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ zou₋₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₋₄?

Really? I also like to eat bananas, but what do you like to do?

乙

我鍾意睇書。我同朋友
一齊睇書。

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ tai⁻² syu⁻¹. ngo₅ tung₋₄ pang₋₄ jau₅ jat⁻¹
cai₋₄ tai⁻² syu⁻¹.

I like to read books. My friend and I read books together.

甲

你 哋 睇 緊 邊 本 書 ？

nei₅ dei⁻² tai⁻² gan⁻² bin⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

What book are you two currently reading?

乙

我 哋 睇 緊 龍 貓 嘅 書 。

ngo₅ dei⁻² tai⁻² gan⁻² lung₄ maau⁻¹ ge⁻³ syu⁻¹.

We are currently reading a chinchilla book.

甲

你 哋 點 解 鐘 意 睇 龍 貓 嘅
書 ？

nei₅ dei⁻² dim⁻² gaai⁻² zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ tai⁻² lung₄ maau⁻¹
ge⁻³ syu⁻¹?

Why do both of you like to read a chinchilla book?

乙

我 哋 鐘 意 龍 貓 嘅 書 因 為
我 哋 好 鍾 意 龍 貓 。

ngo₅ dei⁻² zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ lung₄ maau⁻¹ ge⁻³ syu⁻¹ jan⁻¹ wai₆
ngo₅ dei⁻² hou⁻² zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ lung₄ maau⁻¹.

We like the chinchilla book because we like chinchillas very much.

甲

我 都 鍾 意 龍 貓 嘅 書 . 我
就 想 睇 你 哋 嘅 書 .

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ lung₋₄ maau⁻¹ ge₋₃ syu⁻¹. ngo₅ zau₋₆
soeng⁻² tai⁻² nei₅ dei⁻² ge₋₃ syu⁻¹.

***I also like the chinchilla book, so I want to read the book both
of you are reading.***



第六任務

dai₋₆ luk₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 6

嗰架車係乜嘢顏色

go⁻² gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹ hai₋₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ ngaan₋₄ sik⁻¹

What Color Is That Car

顏色

ngaan_{~4} sik⁻¹

Color

紅色

hung_{~4} sik⁻¹

Red

綠色

luk_{~6} sik⁻¹

Green

藍色

laam_{~4} sik⁻¹

Blue

黃色

wong₄ sik⁻¹

Yellow

金色

gam⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Gold

銀色

ngan₄ sik⁻¹

Silver

白色

baak₆ sik⁻¹

White

黑色

hak⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Black

橙色

caang⁻² sik⁻¹

Orange

紫色

zi⁻² sik⁻¹

Purple

粉紅色

fan⁻² hung⁻⁴ sik⁻¹

Pink

啡 色

fe⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Brown

灰 色

fui⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Gray

你 鍾 意

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃

You like

你 鍾 意 邊 個

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ bin⁻¹ go₋₃

You like which

你 鍾 意 邊 個 顏 色 ？

nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ bin⁻¹ go₋₃ ngaan₋₄ sik⁻¹?

Which color do you like?

我 鍾 意 藍 色 ， 但 係 我 細
佬 鍾 意 紅 色 。

ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ laam₋₄ sik⁻¹, daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ngo₅ sai₋₃ lou⁻²
zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ hung₋₄ sik⁻¹.

I like blue, but my younger brother likes red.

個 架 車

go⁻² gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹

That car

個 架 車 嘅 顏 色

go⁻² gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹ ge⁻³ ngaan₄ sik⁻¹

That car's color

個 架 車 嘅 顏 色 係 乜 嘢
呀？

go⁻² gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹ ge⁻³ ngaan₄ sik⁻¹ hai₆ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₄?

What color is that car?

個 架 車 係 黑 色 嘅。

go⁻² gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹ hai₆ hak⁻¹ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³.

That color is black.

呢 架 車

ni⁻¹ gaa-³ ce⁻¹

This car

呢 架 車 好

ni⁻¹ gaa-³ ce⁻¹ hou⁻²

This car is very

呢 架 車 好 紅 .

ni⁻¹ gaa-³ ce⁻¹ hou⁻² hung⁻⁴.

This car is very red.

嗰 啲

go⁻² di⁻¹

Those

嗰 啲 黑 色 啲 書

go⁻² di⁻¹ hak⁻¹ sik⁻¹ di⁻¹ syu⁻¹

Those black books

嗰 啲 黑 色 啲 書 好 黑 .

go⁻² di⁻¹ hak⁻¹ sik⁻¹ di⁻¹ syu⁻¹ hou⁻² hak⁻¹.

Those black books are very black.

香蕉

hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

Banana

一條香蕉

jat⁻¹ tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

A banana

呢條香蕉

ni⁻¹ tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

This banana

呢條香蕉好黃。

ni⁻¹ tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ hou⁻² wong₋₄.

This banana is very yellow.

魚

jyu₄

Fish

一條魚

jat⁻¹ tiu₄ jyu₄

A fish

呢條魚

ni⁻¹ tiu₄ jyu₄

This fish

呢條魚好藍。

ni⁻¹ tiu₄ jyu₄ hou⁻² laam₄.

This fish is very blue.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Colors

Colors are relatively straight forward. If we take green for example, green itself is 綠色 (luk₋₆ sik⁻¹), however, if we want to use it as an adjective, maybe to describe some object, then we drop the 色 (sik⁻¹) part and just use the color directly. Since the color is considered a possessive property of the word, you use 嘅 (ge⁻³) to finish the connection. Take a look at the following examples:

嗰條香蕉係乜嘢顏色？

go⁻² tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ hai₋₆ mat⁻¹ je₋₅ ngaan₋₄ sik⁻¹?

What color is that banana?

嗰條香蕉係綠色嘅。

go⁻² tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ hai₋₆ luk₋₆ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³.

That banana is green.

嗰條香蕉好綠。

go⁻² tiu₋₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ hou⁻² luk₋₆.

That banana is very green.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

嗰架車好藍。唔鐘意嗰
個顏色。你呢？

乙

我都唔鐘意。我鍾意黃色
嘅但係喺呢度冇黃色
嘅車。

甲

呢度冇黃色嘅車但係有
黃色嘅魚。

乙

我好鍾意呢條魚。條魚
好靚。

甲

我同意。佢好靚。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

嗰架車好藍。唔鐘意嗰
個顏色。你呢？

go⁻² gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹ hou⁻² laam₄. m₄ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ go⁻² go⁻³
ngaan₄ sik⁻¹. nei₅ ni⁻¹?

That car is very blue. I don't like that color. What about you?

乙

我都唔鐘意。我鍾意黃色
嘅但係喺呢度冇黃色
嘅車。

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³. ngo₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ wong₄ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³
daan₆ hai₆ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₆ mou₅ wong₄ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³ ce⁻¹.

***I also don't like it. I like the yellow cars, but there are no
yellow cars here.***

甲

呢度冇黃色嘅車但係有
黃色嘅魚。

ni⁻¹ dou₋₆ mou₋₅ wong₋₄ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³ ce⁻¹ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ jau₋₅
wong₋₄ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³ jyu₋₄.

There are no yellow cars here, but there is a yellow fish.

乙

我好鍾意呢條魚。條魚
好靚。

ngo₋₅ hou⁻² zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ ni⁻¹ tiu₋₄ jyu₋₄. tiu₋₄ jyu₋₄ hou⁻² leng⁻³.

I really like this fish. The fish is very beautiful.

甲

我同意。佢好靚。

ngo₅ tung₄ ji₃. keoi₅ hou⁻² leng₃.

I agree. It's very beautiful.



第三幕

dai₆ saam⁻¹ mok₆

Act 3

深樹灣

sam⁻¹ syu₆ waan⁻¹

Deep Tree Bay

第一任務

dai₋₆ jat⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 1

你識唔識講廣東話

nei₋₅ sik⁻¹ m₋₄ sik⁻¹ gong⁻² gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻²

Do You Know How To Speak Cantonese

知

zi⁻¹

To know (A piece of information)

你 知 唔 知

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹

Do you know

你 知 唔 知 呢 本 書

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹

Do you know this book

你 知 唔 知 呢 本 書 幾 多 錢
呀？

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ gei⁻² do⁻¹ cin₄ aa₄?

Do you know how much this book costs?

識

sik⁻¹

To know (A person or a skill)

你 識 唔 識

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹

Do you know

你 識 唔 識 講

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹ gong⁻²

Do you know how to speak

你 識 唔 識 講 廣 東 話 ？

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹ gong⁻² gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻²?

Do you know how to speak Cantonese?

識·我識講廣東話·

sik⁻¹. ngo₅ sik⁻¹ gong⁻² gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻².

I know. I know how to speak Cantonese.

唔識·我唔識講廣東話·

m₄ sik⁻¹. ngo₅ m₄ sik⁻¹ gong⁻² gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻².

I don't know. I don't know how to speak Cantonese.

你 識 唔 識

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹

Do you know

你 識 唔 識 佢 係 邊 個 ？

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹ keoi₅ hai₆ bin⁻¹ go⁻³ ?

Do you know who is that?

唔 識 . 我 唔 識 佢 係 我 朋
友 識 .

m₄ sik⁻¹. ngo₅ m₄ sik⁻¹ daan₆ hai₆ ngo₅ pang₄ jau₅ sik⁻¹.

I don't know. I don't know but my friend does.

雖然

seoi⁻¹ jin₄

Although

我雖然

ngo₅ seoi⁻¹ jin₄

Although I

我雖然鍾意飲水

ngo₅ seoi⁻¹ jin₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ jam⁻² seoi⁻²

Although I like drinking water

我雖然鍾意飲水，我有
水飲。

ngo₅ seoi⁻¹ jin₄ zung⁻¹ ji₃ jam⁻² seoi⁻², ngo₅ mou₅
seoi⁻² jam⁻².

Although I like drinking water, I have no water to drink.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Differences Between: 知 + 識

In Cantonese there are different ways to ask someone if they know something. The verb to use for this depends on what type of information you are asking about.

知 (zi⁻¹) is used for informational stuff like if you want to know what's the weather today, if someone likes something, if there is some event happening, etc. 識 (sik⁻¹) is used if you want to know if someone knows some person, or some type of skill (like if they speak can speak a certain language or know how to play some sport).

我 識 游 水 .

ngo₅ sik⁻¹ jau₄ seoi⁻².

I know how to swim.

我 識 講 廣 東 話 .

ngo₅ sik⁻¹ gong⁻² gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻².

I know how to speak Cantonese.

我 知 我 唔 知 好 多 嘢 .

ngo₅ zi⁻¹ ngo₅ m₄ zi⁻¹ hou⁻² do⁻¹ je₅.

I know I don't know a lot of stuff.

你 知 我 係 邊 個 .

nei₅ zi⁻¹ ngo₅ hai₆ bin⁻¹ go⁻³.

You know who I am.

有 / 冇 + **Noun + Verb**

You can say whether you have or don't have a particular object in order to perform some action by using 有 (jau₅) / 冇 (mou₅), then the particular noun in question, and the verb at the end in order to express that.

我冇書睇。

ngo₅ mou₅ syu⁻¹ tai⁻².

I have no books to read.

佢哋冇嘢飲。

keoi₅ dei⁻² mou₅ je₅ jam⁻².

They have nothing to drink.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你知唔知八十六街喺邊
度呀？

乙

八十六街喺嗰度。

甲

知唔知如果八十六街有
好多人？

乙

唔知。

甲

你識唔識嗰個人係邊個
呀？

乙

我雖然識佢，佢唔識我。

甲

點解？

乙

因為佢係我朋友嘅朋
友。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你知唔知八十六街喺邊
度呀？

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ baat₋₃ sap₋₆ luk₋₆ gaai⁻¹ hai⁻² bin⁻¹
dou₋₆ aa₄?

Do you know where 86 st is?

乙

八十六街喺個度。

baat₋₃ sap₋₆ luk₋₆ gaai⁻¹ hai⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆.

86 st is over there.

甲

知 唔 知 如 果 八 十 六 街 有
好 多 人 ？

zi⁻¹ m_{~4} zi⁻¹ jyu_{~4} gwo⁻² baat⁻³ sap₋₆ luk₋₆ gaai⁻¹ jau_{~5}
hou⁻² do⁻¹ jan_{~4}?

Do you know if 86 st has a lot of people?

乙

唔 知 .

m_{~4} zi⁻¹.

I don't know.

甲

你識唔識嗰個人係邊個
呀？

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹ go⁻² go⁻³ jan₄ hai₆ bin⁻¹ go⁻³ aa₄?

Do you know who that person is?

乙

我雖然識佢，佢唔識我。

ngo₅ seoi⁻¹ jin₄ sik⁻¹ keoi₅, keoi₅ m₄ sik⁻¹ ngo₅.

Although I know them, they don't know me.

甲

點解？

dim⁻² gaai⁻²?

Why?

乙

因為佢係我朋友嘅朋友。

jan⁻¹ wai₆ keoi₅ hai₆ ngo₅ pang₄ jau₅ ge⁻³ pang₄ jau₅.

Because they are my friend's friend.



第二任務

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 2

唔該，我點去公園

m₋₄ goi⁻¹, ngo₅ dim⁻² heoi₋₃ gung⁻¹ jyun⁻²

Excuse Me, How Do I Get To The Park

唔 該

m_{~4} goi⁻¹

Thank you (Service, Assistance). Excuse Me.

唔 使

m_{~4} sai⁻²

You are welcome (lit. No need)

唔 該, 你 知 唔 知

m_{~4} goi⁻¹, nei₅ zi⁻¹ m_{~4} zi⁻¹

Excuse me, do you know

唔 該, 你 知 唔 知 公 園

m_{~4} goi⁻¹, nei₅ zi⁻¹ m_{~4} zi⁻¹ gung⁻¹ jyun⁻²

Excuse me, do you know park

唔該，你知唔知公園喺
邊度呀？

m₄ goi⁻¹, nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ gung⁻¹ jyun⁻² hai⁻² bin⁻¹
dou₆ aa₄?

Excuse me, do you know where the park is?

知．公園喺六十街．

zi⁻¹. gung⁻¹ jyun⁻² hai⁻² luk₆ sap₆ gaai⁻¹.

Yes. The park is at 60th st.

唔該．

m₄ goi⁻¹.

Thank you

唔使．

m₄ sai⁻².

You're welcome.

點

dim⁻²

How

你 知 唔 知 點

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ dim⁻²

Do you know how

你 知 唔 知 點 去 公 園 ？

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ dim⁻² heoi⁻³ gung⁻¹ jyun⁻²?

Do you know how to go to the park?

知 . 你 要 搭 巴 士 去 個 度 .

zi⁻¹. nei₅ jiu⁻³ daap⁻³ baa⁻¹ si⁻² heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₆.

I do. You need to take the bus to go there.

寫

se⁻²

To write

你 寫

nei₅ se⁻²

You write

你 寫 字

nei₅ se⁻² zi₋₆

You write character(s)

你 知 唔 知 點 寫 字

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₋₄ zi⁻¹ dim⁻² se⁻² zi₋₆

Do you know how to write character(s)

你知唔知點寫呢個字？

nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ dim⁻² se⁻² ni⁻¹ go₃ zi₆?

Do you know how to write this character?

多 謝

do⁻¹ ze⁻⁶

Thank you (Gifts, Compliments)

你 嘅

nei⁵ ge⁻³

Your

你 嘅 廣 東 話

nei⁵ ge⁻³ gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻²

Your Cantonese

你 嘅 廣 東 話 好 好 .

nei⁵ ge⁻³ gwong⁻² dung⁻¹ waa⁻² hou⁻² hou⁻².

Your Cantonese is very good.

多謝。

do⁻¹ ze₋₆.

Thank you.

真

zan⁻¹

Real. Really.

真 係

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆

Really is

呢 個 人 真 係

ni⁻¹ go₋₃ jan₋₄ zan⁻¹ hai₋₆

This person really is

呢 個 人 真 係 好 靚 .

ni⁻¹ go₋₃ jan₋₄ zan⁻¹ hai₋₆ hou⁻² leng₋₃.

This person really is beautiful.

你 識 唔 識 佢?

nei₅ sik⁻¹ m₄ sik⁻¹ keoi₅?

Do you know them?

識。

sik⁻¹.

I do.

真 係?!

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆?!

Really?!

我 想

ngo₅ soeng⁻²

I want

我 想 同 埋 你

ngo₅ soeng⁻² tung₄ maai₄ nei₅

I want to with you

我 想 同 埋 你 一 齊 去

ngo₅ soeng⁻² tung₄ maai₄ nei₅ jat⁻¹ cai₄ heoi⁻³

I want to go together with you

我 想 同 埋 你 一 齊 去 博 物
館 .

ngo₅ soeng⁻² tung₄ maai₄ nei₅ jat⁻¹ cai₄ heoi⁻³ bok⁻³
mat₆ gun⁻².

I want to go together with you to the museum.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Excuse Me / Thank You / You're Welcome: 唔該 + 多謝 + 唔使

In Cantonese there are two ways to say **Thank you**, 唔該 ($m_4\ goi^{-1}$) is used when someone is helping you with something (maybe holding the door for you or passing the salt), and 多謝 ($do^{-1}\ ze_6$) is used for things that may be more intangible, like giving you a compliment, or giving you a gift (possibly due to the thought of gift giving). At the same time, 唔該 ($m_4\ goi^{-1}$) is also used when you want to say Excuse Me. If you want to say **You're welcome**, you can use 唔使 ($m_4\ sai^{-2}$), which means **No need**. This can be added before both of the above **Thanks** to express that you are welcome.

唔該，你有冇一枝筆呀？

$m_4\ goi^{-1},\ nei_5\ jau_5\ mou_5\ jat^{-1}\ zi^{-1}\ bat^{-1}\ aa_4?$

Excuse me, do you have a pen?

有。

$jau_5.$

I do.

唔該。

$m_4\ goi^{-1}.$

Thank you.

唔使多謝。

m_{~4} sai⁻² do⁻¹ ze₋₆.

You're welcome.

你好靚。

nei₅ hou⁻² leng₋₃.

You are beautiful.

多謝。

do⁻¹ ze₋₆.

Thank you.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

唔該，我想去一百一十五街嘅公園但係我唔知點去嗰度。你知唔知呀？

乙

知。你要搭的士去嗰度。

甲

唔該。

乙

唔使唔該。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

唔該，我想去一百一十五街嘅公園但係我唔知點去嗰度。你知唔知呀？

m₄ goi⁻¹, ngo₅ soeng⁻² heoi₃ jat⁻¹ baak₃ jat⁻¹ sap₆ ng₅
gaai⁻¹ ge₃ gung⁻¹ jyun⁻² daan₆ hai₆ ngo₅ m₄ zi⁻¹ dim⁻²
heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆. nei₅ zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ aa₄?

Excuse me, I want to go to the park that's on 115th st, but I don't know how to go there. Do you know?

乙

知。你要搭的士去嗰度。

zi⁻¹. nei₅ jiu₃ daap₃ dik⁻¹ si⁻² heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆.

I do. You need to take the taxi there.

甲

唔 該。

m₄ goi⁻¹.

Thank you.

乙

唔 使 唔 該。

m₄ sai⁻² m₄ goi⁻¹.

You're welcome.



第三任務

dai₋₆ saam⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 3

請等陣。唔該晒。

cing⁻² dang⁻² zan₋₆ m₋₄ goi⁻¹ saai₋₃.

Please Wait A Moment. Thank You Very Much.

可以

ho⁻² ji₅

To be able to

你可唔可以

nei₅ ho⁻² m₄ ho⁻² ji₅

Are you able to

你可唔可以買

nei₅ ho⁻² m₄ ho⁻² ji₅ maai₅

Are you able to buy

你可唔可以買呢本書?

nei₅ ho⁻² m₄ ho⁻² ji₅ maai₅ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Are you able to buy this book?

我唔可以買呢本書因為
我有錢。

ngo₅ m₄ ho⁻² ji₅ maai₅ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ jan⁻¹ wai₆ ngo₅
mou₅ cin₄.

I'm not able to buy this book because I don't have money.

我 冇 錢

ngo₅ mou₅ cin₄

I don't have money

我 冇 錢 所 以

ngo₅ mou₅ cin₄ so⁻² ji₅

I don't have money so

我 冇 錢 所 以 唔 會 去 個
度。

ngo₅ mou₅ cin₄ so⁻² ji₅ m₄ wui₅ heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I don't have money so I'm not going there.

飽

baau²

To be full (stomach)

我好飽。

ngo₅ hou² baau².

I'm full.

肚餓

tou₅ ngo₆

Hungry

我肚餓。

ngo₅ tou₅ ngo₆.

I'm hungry.

我好肚餓。

ngo₅ hou² tou₅ ngo₆.

I'm very hungry.

到

dou⁻²

(Action was able to be completed successfully)

我 食 到

ngo₅ sik₆ dou⁻²

I was able to eat

我 食 唔 到

ngo₅ sik₆ m₄ dou⁻²

I wasn't able to eat

我 食 唔 到 嘢 食

ngo₅ sik₆ m₄ dou⁻² je₅ sik₆

I wasn't able to eat the food

我食唔到嘢食因為我好
飽。

ngo₅ sik₆ m₄ dou⁻² je₅ sik₆ jan⁻¹ wai₆ ngo₅ hou⁻² baau⁻².

I wasn't able to eat the food because I was full.

等

dang⁻²

To wait

一 陣

jat⁻¹ zan₋₆

A moment

等 陣

dang⁻² zan₋₆

Wait a moment

嗰 陣

go⁻² zan₋₆

When. At that moment.

我等巴士嗰陣

ngo₅ dang⁻² baa⁻¹ si⁻² go⁻² zan₆

When I was waiting for the bus

我等巴士嗰陣睇到一本書。

ngo₅ dang⁻² baa⁻¹ si⁻² go⁻² zan₆ tai⁻² dou⁻² jat⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

When I was waiting for the bus, I was able to read a book.

我等巴士嘅時候睇到一本書。

ngo₅ dang⁻² baa⁻¹ si⁻² ge⁻³ si₄ hau₆ tai⁻² dou⁻² jat⁻¹
bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

When I was waiting for the bus, I was able to read a book.

覺得

gok-3 dak⁻¹

To think. To feel.

我覺得

ngo,5 gok-3 dak⁻¹

I feel

我覺得佢唔鍾意

ngo,5 gok-3 dak⁻¹ keoi,5 m,4 zung⁻¹ ji-3

I feel that he doesn't like

我覺得佢唔鍾意呢本書。

ngo,5 gok-3 dak⁻¹ keoi,5 m,4 zung⁻¹ ji-3 ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I feel that he doesn't like this book.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Different Ways Of Saying "When": 嗰陣 + 嘅時候

If you want to say **When**, you can use either 嗰陣 (go⁻² zan₋₆) or 嘅時候 (ge⁻³ si₋₄ hau₋₆), they are interchangeable.

我 喺 嗰 度 嗰 陣 ...

ngo₅ hai⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆ go⁻² zan₋₆...

When I was there ...

我 喺 嗰 度 嘅 時 候 ...

ngo₅ hai⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆ ge⁻³ si₋₄ hau₋₆...

When I was there ...

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我 覺 得 我 朋 友 唔 會 鍾 意
呢 本 書 所 以 我 唔 會 買
佢。

乙

如 果 佢 唔 會 鍾 意 呢 本
書，你 會 買 乜 嘢 呀？

甲

我唔知。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我 覺 得 我 朋 友 唔 會 鍾 意
呢 本 書 所 以 我 唔 會 買
佢 。

ngo₅ gok⁻³ dak⁻¹ ngo₅ pang₄ jau₅ m₄ wui₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³
ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹ so⁻² ji₅ ngo₅ m₄ wui₅ maai₅ keoi₅.

I think that my friend is not going to like this book, so I'm not going to buy it.

乙

如 果 佢 唔 會 鍾 意 呢 本
書，你 會 買 乜 嘢 呀？

jyu₄ gwo⁻² keoi₅ m₄ wui₅ zung⁻¹ ji-3 ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹,
nei₅ wui₅ maai₅ mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₄?

If they aren't going to like this book, what are you going to buy?

甲

我 唔 知。

ngo₅ m₄ zi⁻¹.

I don't know.



第四任務

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 4

你有冇去過越南

nei_{,5} jau_{,5} mou_{,5} heoi₋₃ gwo₋₃ jyut₋₆ naam₋₄

Have You Ever Been To Vietnam

我

ngo₅

I

我 仲

ngo₅ zung₋₆

I still

我 仲 有 呢 本 書 .

ngo₅ zung₋₆ jau₅ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I still have this book.

未

mei₋₆

(Action has not yet happened)

我 仲 未

ngo₅ zung₋₆ mei₋₆

I still haven't yet

我 仲 未 睇 呢 本 書 .

ngo₅ zung₋₆ mei₋₆ tai⁻² ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I still haven't yet read this book.

先

sin⁻¹

(To do something first)

我 食 先 .

ngo₅ sik₋₆ sin⁻¹.

I will eat first.

我 食 飯 先 .

ngo₅ sik₋₆ faan₋₆ sin⁻¹.

I will eat dinner first.

之 前

zi⁻¹ cin₋₄

Before

我 食 飯 之 前

ngo₅ sik₋₆ faan₋₆ zi⁻¹ cin₋₄

Before I eat dinner

我 食 飯 之 前 會 飲 果 汁
先。

ngo₅ sik₋₆ faan₋₆ zi⁻¹ cin₋₄ wui₅ jam⁻² gwo⁻² zap⁻¹ sin⁻¹.

Before I eat dinner, I will drink juice first.

之後

zi⁻¹ hau₋₆

After

我食飯之後

ngo_{,5} sik₋₆ faan₋₆ zi⁻¹ hau₋₆

After I eat dinner

我食飯之後會飲果汁。

ngo_{,5} sik₋₆ faan₋₆ zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ wui_{,5} jam⁻² gwo⁻² zap⁻¹.

After I eat dinner, I will drink juice.

過

gwo-3

(Action was previously experienced in the past)

你 有 冇 去 過

nei,5 jau,5 mou,5 heoi-3 gwo-3

Have you ever gone to

你 有 冇 去 過 越 南 ？

nei,5 jau,5 mou,5 heoi-3 gwo-3 jyut-6 naam-4?

Have you ever gone to Vietnam?

有 . 我 去 過 越 南 .

jau,5 ngo,5 heoi-3 gwo-3 jyut-6 naam-4.

Yes. I've gone to Vietnam.

冇·我未去過越南·

mou₅. ngo₅ mei₆ heoi₃ gwo₃ jyut₆ naam₄·

No. I haven't gone to Vietnam yet.

晒

saai-3

(Action is done but some other related action may still happen)

你 食 晒

nei_5 sik_6 saai-3

I ate all of it

你 食 唔 晒

nei_5 sik_6 m_4 saai-3

I was not able to eat all of it

你 食 唔 晒 未 呀？

nei_5 sik_6 m_4 saai-3 mei_6 aa_4?

You still aren't done eating all of it yet? (Are you almost done?)

未食晒。仲有好多嘢食。

mei₋₆ sik₋₆ saai₋₃. zung₋₆ jau₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹ je₅ sik₋₆.

I haven't finished eating all of it yet. I still have a lot to eat.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

To Have Experienced Something: 過

If you want to ask someone if they've ever done something before, you use 過 (gwo-3). You can combine this with 有冇 (jau,5 mou,5) to ask your question: have you or have you not ever X. You reply using 有 (jau,5) or 冇 (mou,5).

你有冇食過芒果？

nei,5 jau,5 mou,5 sik,6 gwo-3 mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²?

Have you ever eaten mangos before?

有。我食過芒果。

jau,5. ngo,5 sik,6 gwo-3 mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I have. I've eaten mangos.

冇。我冇食過芒果。

mou,5. ngo,5 mou,5 sik,6 gwo-3 mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I haven't. I haven't eaten mangos.

Differences Between: 過 + 咗 + 晒

Cantonese has multiple ways for expressing different types of ideas and even actions. In this particular case, 過 (gwo-3), 咗 (zo-2), and 晒 (saai-3) refer to different aspects of completion or experience. We use 過 (gwo-3) when dealing with things that have been experienced in the past (like at some point in your life). 咗 (zo-2) is used when an action has been completed (recently). 晒 (saai-3) can be used when stating that something has been completed but there may be more related actions that still have yet to come but will be completed soon. Usually 晒 (saai-3) can be used when dealing with a group of objects.

我食過芒果。

ngo₅ sik₆ gwo-3 mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I've eaten mangos before.

我食咗芒果。

ngo₅ sik₆ zo⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I finished eating the mango.

我食晒芒果。

ngo₅ sik₆ saai-3 mong⁻¹ gwo⁻².

I ate the mangos.

You Aren't X Yet: Noun Verb X 未呀

When you want to ask someone if they haven't finished doing something that you expected them to have already done, you can use the pattern: **Noun Verb X 未呀** (mei₋₆ aa₋₄)?

你食咗芒果未呀?

nei₅ sik₋₆ zo⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² mei₋₆ aa₋₄?

You haven't finished eating the mango yet?

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我真係好想食呢個蘋果

但係而家唔可以。

乙

點解？

甲

因為我要睇書先之後可

以食。

乙

但係你睇書之前都可以
食蘋果先。

甲

好。我會食蘋果先。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我真係好想食呢個蘋果
但係而家唔可以。

ngo₅ zan⁻¹ hai₆ hou⁻² soeng⁻² sik₆ ni⁻¹ go₃ ping₄ gwo⁻²
daan₆ hai₆ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ m₄ ho⁻² ji₅.

I really want to eat this apple but I can't right now.

乙

點解？

dim⁻² gaai⁻²?

Why?

甲

因為我要睇書先之後可以食。

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆ ngo₅ jiu⁻³ tai⁻² syu⁻¹ sin⁻¹ zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ ho⁻²
ji₅ sik₋₆.

Because I need to read this book first and then I can eat.

乙

但係你睇書之前都可以食蘋果先。

daan₋₆ hai₋₆ nei₅ tai⁻² syu⁻¹ zi⁻¹ cin₋₄ dou⁻¹ ho⁻² ji₅ sik₋₆
ping₋₄ gwo⁻² sin⁻¹.

But before you read you can also eat the apple first.

甲

好· 我 會 食 蘋 果 先·

hou⁻². ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} sik₋₆ ping₋₄ gwo⁻² sin⁻¹.

Ok. I will eat the apple first.



第五任務

dai₋₆ ng₅ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 5

佢 喺 我 朋友 嘅 隔離

keoi₅ hai⁻² ngo₅ pang₋₄ jau₅ ge₋₃ gaak₋₃ lei₋₄

She Is Next To My Friend

店

dim-3

Store (Shop)

一間店

jat⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ dim-3

A store

一間書店

jat⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ syu⁻¹ dim-3

A book store

枱

toi₄

Table

一 張 枱

jat⁻¹ zoeng⁻¹ toi₄

A table

電

din₋₆

Electricity

視

si₋₆

Sight

電 視

din₋₆ si₋₆

Television (Electric Sight)

一 部 電 視

jat⁻¹ bou₋₆ din₋₆ si₋₆

A Television

電

din₋₆

Electricity

腦

nou_{,5}

Brain

電 腦

din₋₆ nou_{,5}

Computer (Electric Brain)

一 部 電 腦

jat⁻¹ bou₋₆ din₋₆ nou_{,5}

A computer

電

din₋₆

Electricity

話

waa⁻²

Speech

電 話

din₋₆ waa⁻²

Telephone (Electric Speech)

一 部 電 話

jat⁻¹ bou₋₆ din₋₆ waa⁻²

門

mun₄

Door

口

hau²

Mouth

門 口

mun₄ hau²

Entrance

一 個 門 口

jat⁻¹ go₃ mun₄ hau²

An entrance

出

ceot⁻¹

To go out

口

hau⁻²

Mouth

出 口

ceot⁻¹ hau⁻²

Exit

一 個 出 口

jat⁻¹ go-3 ceot⁻¹ hau⁻²

An exit

樓

lau₄

Building

一間樓

jat⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ lau₄

A building

嗰間樓

go⁻² gaan⁻¹ lau₄

That building

嗰間樓嘅門口好紅。

go⁻² gaan⁻¹ lau₄ ge⁻³ mun₄ hau⁻² hou⁻² hung₄.

That building's entrance is very red.

出

ceot⁻¹

To go out

出 去

ceot⁻¹ heoi-3

To go out (leaving outwards from the current spot to go to another spot)

我 會 出 去 先 .

ngo₅ wui₅ ceot⁻¹ heoi-3 sin⁻¹.

I will go out first.

出

ceot⁻¹

To go out

嚟

lai₋₄

To come

出 嚟

ceot⁻¹ lai₋₄

**To go back (leaving outwards from the current spot to go back
to another spot)**

你 出 嚟 之 前

nei₋₅ ceot⁻¹ lai₋₄ zi⁻¹ cin₋₄

Before you come back

你 出 嚟 之 前 飲 水 先 .

nei₅ ceot⁻¹ lai₄ zi⁻¹ cin₄ jam⁻² seoi⁻² sin⁻¹.

Before you come back, drink water first.

返

faan⁻¹

To return

返 去

faan⁻¹ heoi⁻³

To go and return (to return to their original location by leaving their current location outwards)

你 返 去 之 前

nei₅ faan⁻¹ heoi⁻³ zi⁻¹ cin₄

Before you return

你 返 去 之 前 飲 茶 先

nei₅ faan⁻¹ heoi⁻³ zi⁻¹ cin₄ jam⁻² caa₄ sin⁻¹

Before you return, drink some tea first.

返

faan⁻¹

To return

返嚟

faan⁻¹ lai₄

To return back (to return back to the speaker's location)

你返嚟之前

nei₅ faan⁻¹ lai₄ zi⁻¹ cin₄

Before you return back

你返嚟之前食嘢先

nei₅ faan⁻¹ lai₄ zi⁻¹ cin₄ sik₆ je₅ sin⁻¹

Before you return back, eat something first.

前

cin₋₄

Before / In Front

後

hau₋₆

After / Behind

便

bin₋₆

Side

邊

bin⁻¹

Side

我 喺 你 嘅 前 邊。
ngo₅ hai⁻² nei₅ ge⁻³ cin₄ bin⁻¹.

I'm in front of you.

我 喺 你 嘅 後 邊。
ngo₅ hai⁻² nei₅ ge⁻³ hau₆ bin⁻¹.

I'm behind you.

面

min₋₆

Side. Face.

我 喺 你 嘅 前 面

ngo₅ hai⁻² nei₅ ge⁻³ cin₋₄ min₋₆

I'm in front of you.

我 喺 你 嘅 後 面

ngo₅ hai⁻² nei₅ ge⁻³ hau₋₆ min₋₆

I'm behind you.

左

zo⁻²

Left

右

jau⁻²

Right

上

soeng₋₆

Top. Above.

下

haa₋₆

Bottom. Below.

我 嘅 電 腦 喺 枱 上

ngo₅ ge₃ din₆ nou₅ hai² toi₄ soeng₆

My computer is on top of the table.

我 嘅 電 話 喺 枱 下

ngo₅ ge₃ din₆ waa² hai² toi₄ haa₆

My phone is under the table.

外

ngoi₋₆

Outer. External.

外國

ngoi₋₆ gwok₋₃

Foreign Country (Outer Country)

外國人

ngoi₋₆ gwok₋₃ jan₋₄

Foreigner (Outer Country Person)

佢哋係外國人。

keoi₋₅ dei⁻² hai₋₆ ngoi₋₆ gwok₋₃ jan₋₄.

They are foreigners.

嗰 啲

go⁻² di⁻¹

Those

嗰 啲 人 喺 外 面

go⁻² di⁻¹ jan₄ hai⁻² ngoi₆ min₆

Those people outside

嗰 啲 人 喺 外 面 係 外 國
人。

go⁻² di⁻¹ jan₄ hai⁻² ngoi₆ min₆ hai₆ ngoi₆ gwok⁻³ jan₄.

Those people outside are foreigners.

內

noi₋₆

Inside. Internal.

喺 雪 櫃 內 面

hai⁻² syut⁻³ gwai₋₆ noi₋₆ min₋₆

Inside the refrigerator

我 嘅 蘋 果 汁 喺 雪 櫃 內
面

ngo_{,5} ge⁻³ ping₋₄ gwo⁻² zap⁻¹ hai⁻² syut⁻³ gwai₋₆ noi₋₆ min₋₆

My apple juice is inside the refrigerator.

隔離

gaak-3 lei-4

Next To

喺我朋友嘅隔離

hai-2 ngo,5 pang-4 jau,5 ge-3 gaak-3 lei-4

Next to my friend

佢喺我朋友嘅隔離。

keoi,5 hai-2 ngo,5 pang-4 jau,5 ge-3 gaak-3 lei-4.

She is next to my friend.

中間

zung⁻¹ gaan⁻¹

In the middle

喺嗰啲樓嘅中間

hai⁻² go⁻² di⁻¹ lau₄ ge⁻³ zung⁻¹ gaan⁻¹

In the middle of those buildings

佢等緊你喺嗰啲樓嘅中間。

keoi₅ dang⁻² gan⁻² nei₅ hai⁻² go⁻² di⁻¹ lau₄ ge⁻³ zung⁻¹ gaan⁻¹.

He is waiting for you in the middle of those buildings.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

The Sound Of 嚟

In the beginning of the 粵卷 (jyut₋₆ gyun⁻²), I mentioned that there are some pronunciation differences that are usually said differently than what the standard shows. In this case, this applies to 嚟 (lai₋₄). Normally it should be pronounced as lai₋₄, but in a lot of situations you will hear it pronounced as lei₋₄ instead.

地鐵就嚟啦。

dei₋₆ tit₋₃ zau₋₆ lei₋₄ laa⁻¹.

The train is almost here.

你返嚟之前買啲芒果先。

nei₋₅ faan⁻¹ lei₋₄ zi⁻¹ cin₋₄ maai₋₅ di⁻¹ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² sin⁻¹.

Before you come, buy some mangos first.

Side/Face: 面 + 邊 + 便

When saying things like inside/outside, in front of/behind, you can use either 邊 (bin⁻¹), 便 (bin₋₆), or 面 (min₋₆) interchangeably.

嗰本書喺書店內邊。

go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² syu⁻¹ dim₋₃ noi₋₆ bin⁻¹.

That book is inside the book store.

嗰本書喺書店內便。

go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² syu⁻¹ dim₋₃ noi₋₆ bin₋₆.

That book is inside the book store.

嗰本書喺書店內面。

go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ hai⁻² syu⁻¹ dim₋₃ noi₋₆ min₋₆.

That book is inside the book store.

Positional / Directional Movements: 出 + 返 + 去 + 嚟

The directional and positional movements in Cantonese are relative to the position of the source location, and destination, and also depends on the intention. Meaning that if you are trying to return back somewhere it could be express different depending on if you are leaving the location to return somewhere you've previously been to, or if you are moving towards something, they are said slightly differently.

我 返 去 美 國 .

ngo₅ faan⁻¹ heoi₋₃ mei₅ gwok₋₃.

I'm returning back to the United States. (returning back towards the US)

我 出 去 美 國 .

ngo₅ ceot⁻¹ heoi₋₃ mei₅ gwok₋₃.

I'm going to the United States. (going towards the US)

我 返 嚟 美 國 .

ngo₅ faan⁻¹ lai₋₄ mei₅ gwok₋₃.

I'm coming back to the United States. (returning back to the US)

我 出 嚟 美 國 .

ngo₅ ceot⁻¹ lai₋₄ mei₅ gwok₋₃.

I'm going back to the United States. (going back towards the US)

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你朋友喺邊度呀？

乙

我朋友喺書店內便。佢
買緊書。

甲

佢嘅書喺邊度？

乙

佢嘅書喺枱上。

甲

佢而家返緊嚟我哋。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你朋友喺邊度呀？

nei₅ pang₄ jau₅ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆ aa₄?

Where is your friend?

乙

我朋友喺書店內便。佢
買緊書。

ngo₅ pang₄ jau₅ hai⁻² syu⁻¹ dim₃ noi₆ bin₆. keoi₅ maai₅
gan⁻² syu⁻¹.

My friend is inside the book store. She is buying book(s).

甲

佢嘅書喺邊度？

keoi₅ ge₋₃ syu⁻¹ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆?

Where is her book?

乙

佢嘅書喺枱上。

keoi₅ ge₋₃ syu⁻¹ hai⁻² toi₋₄ soeng₋₆.

Her book is on top of the table.

甲

佢而家返緊嚟我哋。

keoi₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ faan⁻¹ gan⁻² lai₄ ngo₅ dei⁻².

She is coming back to us now.



第六任務

dai₋₆ luk₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 6

等我睇吓我地圖先

dang⁻² ngo_{,5} tai⁻² haa⁻² ngo_{,5} dei₋₆ tou₋₄ sin⁻¹

Let Me Take A Look At My Map First

俾

bei⁻²

To give

俾 啲 個 蘋果

bei⁻² go⁻² go⁻³ ping_{~4} gwo⁻²

Give that apple

俾 啲 個 蘋果 我

bei⁻² go⁻² go⁻³ ping_{~4} gwo⁻² ngo_{~5}

Give that apple to me

唔 該， 你 可 唔 可 以 俾 啲
個 蘋果 我？

m_{~4} goi⁻¹, nei_{~5} ho⁻² m_{~4} ho⁻² ji_{~5} bei⁻² go⁻² go⁻³ ping_{~4}
gwo⁻² ngo_{~5}?

Excuse me, are you able to give that apple to me?

幫

bong⁻¹

To help

幫 我

bong⁻¹ ngo₅

Help me

幫 我 買

bong⁻¹ ngo₅ maai₅

Help me buy

幫 我 買 一 個 蘋 果

bong⁻¹ ngo₅ maai₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃ ping_{~4} gwo⁻²

Help me buy an apple

唔該，你可唔可以幫我
買一個蘋果？

m_{~4} goi⁻¹, nei₅ ho⁻² m_{~4} ho⁻² ji₅ bong⁻¹ ngo₅ maai₅ jat⁻¹
go⁻³ ping₄ gwo⁻²?

Excuse me, are you able to help me buy an apple?

地圖

dei₋₆ tou₋₄

Map

圖書館

tou₋₄ syu⁻¹ gun⁻²

Library

嗰間圖書館有冇地圖?

go⁻² gaan⁻¹ tou₋₄ syu⁻¹ gun⁻² jau₅ mou₅ dei₋₆ tou₋₄?

Does that library have a map?

等

dang²

To let

等 我 去 個 度 .

dang² ngo₅ heoi₃ go² dou₆.

Let me go over there.

吓

haa²

(To do an action for a bit)

等我睇吓

dang² ngo₅ tai² haa²

Let me take a look

等我睇吓我地圖先。

dang² ngo₅ tai² haa² ngo₅ dei₆ tou₄ sin¹.

Let me take a look at my map first.

啦

laa⁻¹

(Ending Particle: Used for statements)

走

zau⁻²

To leave

我會走

ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} zau⁻²

I'm leaving.

我會走啦。

ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} zau⁻² laa⁻¹.

I'm leaving. (softer)

聽

ting-3

To hear

我 聽 到 你 .

ngo₅ ting-3 dou² nei₅.

I was able to hear you.

我 聽 唔 到 你 .

ngo₅ ting-3 m₄ dou² nei₅.

I wasn't able to hear you.

愛

oi-3

To love

我 愛 你 .

ngo,5 oi-3 nei,5.

I love you.

講 俾 X 知

gong⁻² bei⁻² X zi⁻¹

To tell X that

我 想 講 俾 你 知

ngo_{,5} soeng⁻² gong⁻² bei⁻² nei_{,5} zi⁻¹

I want to tell you that

我 想 講 俾 你 知 我 愛 你 .

ngo_{,5} soeng⁻² gong⁻² bei⁻² nei_{,5} zi⁻¹ ngo_{,5} oi⁻³ nei_{,5}.

I want to tell you that I love you.

話 俾 X 聽

waa⁻² bei⁻² X ting⁻³

To tell X that

我 想 話 俾 你 聽

ngo^{,5} soeng⁻² waa⁻² bei⁻² nei^{,5} ting⁻³

I want to tell you that

我 想 話 俾 你 聽 我 愛 你 .

ngo^{,5} soeng⁻² waa⁻² bei⁻² nei^{,5} ting⁻³ ngo^{,5} oi⁻³ nei^{,5}.

I want to tell you that I love you.

落

lok₋₆

To fall. To drop. To get off a vehicle.

雨

jyu_{,5}

Rain

落 雨

lok₋₆ jyu_{,5}

To rain

而 家 落 緊 雨 .

ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ lok₋₆ gan⁻² jyu_{,5}.

It's raining now.

而 家 落 緊 雪 .

ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ lok₋₆ gan⁻² syut₋₃.

It's snowing now.

上車

soeng₋₆ ce⁻¹

To get on a vehicle (Car, Bus, Train).

喺呢個巴士站上車

hai⁻² ni⁻¹ go₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆ soeng₋₆ ce⁻¹

Get on at this bus stop.

我要喺呢個巴士站上
車。

ngo_{,5} jiu₋₃ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ go₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆ soeng₋₆ ce⁻¹.

I need to get on (the bus) at this bus stop.

落 車

lok₋₆ ce⁻¹

To get off a vehicle (Car, Bus, Train).

喺 呢 個 巴 士 站 落 車

hai⁻² ni⁻¹ go⁻³ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆ lok₋₆ ce⁻¹

Get off at this bus stop.

我 要 喺 呢 個 巴 士 站 落
車。

ngo₅ jiu⁻³ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ go⁻³ baa⁻¹ si⁻² zaam₋₆ lok₋₆ ce⁻¹.

I need to get off (the bus) at this bus stop.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

To Do An Action For A Bit: 吓

吓 (haa⁻²) can be placed after a verb to indicate that the action will be done for a bit.

我會睇吓呢本書。

ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} tai⁻² haa⁻² ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

I will read this book a bit.

你會聽吓佢哋。

nei_{,5} wui_{,5} ting⁻³ haa⁻² keoi_{,5} dei⁻².

You will listen to them a bit.

佢會食吓呢個士多啤梨。

keoi_{,5} wui_{,5} sik⁻⁶ haa⁻² ni⁻¹ go⁻³ si⁻² do⁻¹ be⁻¹ lei⁻².

They will eat this strawberry a bit.

Ending Particles: 啦

The ending particle 啦 (laa⁻¹) can be used at the end of statements. In many cases this is just used as a filler to make the sentence sound better, or to soften the tone of the sentence so the sentence doesn't sound as harsh or as abrupt. This ending particle can make the sentence and the language sound more fun and you will be hearing it a lot in conversations.

我 想 去 個 度 .

ngo₅ soeng⁻² heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I want to go there.

我 想 去 個 度 啦 .

ngo₅ soeng⁻² heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆ laa⁻¹.

I want to go there.

我 想 食 嘢 .

ngo₅ soeng⁻² sik₋₆ je₅.

I want to eat stuff.

我 想 食 嘢 啦 .

ngo₅ soeng⁻² sik₋₆ je₅ laa⁻¹.

I want to eat stuff.

To Give Someone Something: 俾 X Y

If you want to give someone something, you can use this construction. The object (**X**) is placed between the person you want to give it to (**Y**).

我想俾蘋果你。

ngo₅ soeng⁻² bei⁻² ping₄ gwo⁻² nei₅.

I want to give you the apple.

你想俾書我。

nei₅ soeng⁻² bei⁻² syu⁻¹ ngo₅.

You want to give me the book.

佢想俾佢嘅電話號碼你。

keoi₅ soeng⁻² bei⁻² keoi₅ ge⁻³ din₆ waa⁻² hou₆ maa₅ nei₅.

They want to give you their phone number.

Letting Someone Know You Need To Do Something: 等

If you need to lightly tell someone that you need to do something first, you can use 等 (dang⁻²). In this way it's used more like a **wait for me to do this first, allow me to**, or **let me** sort of way. You aren't actually asking them for permission to do the action. There is another word that you'll learn in the future where it's related to actual permission.

等我去嗰度先。

dang⁻² ngo_{,5} heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₋₆ sin⁻¹.

Let me go there first.

等我返屋企先，之後會食飯。

dang⁻² ngo_{,5} faan⁻¹ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² sin⁻¹, zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ wui_{,5} sik₋₆ faan₋₆.

Let me get back home first, then I'll eat dinner.

To Tell Someone Something: 講俾 X 知 + 話俾 X 聽

You can use either of these patterns interchangeably when wanting to tell someone something.

佢講俾我知佢嘅號碼。

keoi₅ gong⁻² bei⁻² ngo₅ zi⁻¹ keoi₅ ge⁻³ hou₆ maa₅.

He told me his number.

佢話俾我聽佢嘅號碼。

keoi₅ waa⁻² bei⁻² ngo₅ ting⁻³ keoi₅ ge⁻³ hou₆ maa₅.

She told me her number.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

唔該，我而家想去舖頭
買芒果但係唔知點去個
度。你可唔可以幫我呀？

乙

可以。如果你想去舖頭
買嘢，你要搭巴士先，之
後喺蘋果街落車。

甲

唔該。

乙

唔使。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

唔該，我而家想去舖頭
買芒果但係唔知點去個
度。你可唔可以幫我呀？

m₄ goi⁻¹, ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ soeng⁻² heoi⁻³ pou⁻³ tau⁻² maai₅
mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² daan₆ hai₆ m₄ zi⁻¹ dim⁻² heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₆.
nei₅ ho⁻² m₄ ho⁻² ji₅ bong⁻¹ ngo₅ aa₄?

***Excuse me, I want to go to the store to buy a mango but I
don't know how to go there. Can you help me?***

乙

可以。如果你想去舖頭
買嘢，你要搭巴士先，之
後喺蘋果街落車。

ho⁻² ji₅. jyu₋₄ gwo⁻² nei₅ soeng⁻² heoi₋₃ pou₋₃ tau⁻² maai₅
je₅, nei₅ jiu₋₃ daap₋₃ baa⁻¹ si⁻² sin⁻¹, zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ hai⁻²
ping₋₄ gwo⁻² gaai⁻¹ lok₋₆ ce⁻¹.

I can. If you want to go to there store to buy stuff, you have to take the bus first, and then get off at Apple St.

甲

唔該。

m₋₄ goi⁻¹.

Thank you.

乙

唔使。

m₄ sai².

You're welcome.



第四幕

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ mok₋₆

Act 4

水晶頂

seoi⁻² zing⁻¹ deng⁻²

Crystal Peak

第一任務

dai₋₆ jat⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 1

早晨·好耐冇見·

zou⁻² san₋₄· hou⁻² noi₋₆ mou₋₅ gin₋₃·

Good Morning. Long Time No See.

早

zou²

Early

早晨

zou² san₄

Good Morning (Early Morning)

再

zoi-3

Again

見

gin-3

To see

再 見

zoi-3 gin-3

Goodbye (See you again)

耐

noi₋₆

A long time

好耐

hou⁻² noi₋₆

Very long time

好耐冇見。

hou⁻² noi₋₆ mou₅ gin₋₃.

Long time no see.

你

nei₅

You

好

hou⁻²

Good

你好

nei₅ hou⁻²

Hello (You Good)

點 呀？

dim² aa₄?

How are you? (Slang but a common and fundamental Cantonese greeting)

早晨·你 點 呀？

zou² san₄· nei₅ dim² aa₄?

Good Morning. How are you?

不如

bat⁻¹ jyu₄

Why don't ... (used for suggestions)

不如去食嘢先?

bat⁻¹ jyu₄ heoi⁻³ sik₆ je₅ sin⁻¹?

Why don't we go eat something first?

我肚餓。不如去食嘢先?

ngo₅ tou₅ ngo₆ bat⁻¹ jyu₄ heoi⁻³ sik₆ je₅ sin⁻¹?

I'm hungry. Why don't we go eat first?

啊

aa-3

(Ending Particle: Used to show agreement)

我肚餓。不如去食嘢先？

ngo₅ tou₅ ngo₆. bat⁻¹ jyu₄ heoi₃ sik₆ je₅ sin⁻¹?

好啊。

hou⁻² aa-3.

Alright.

喎

wo-3

(Ending Particle: Indicates some sort of realization or to indicate something is important)

我真係唔鍾意食魚。

ngo˩5 zan˩1 hai˩6 m˩4 zung˩1 ji˩3 sik˩6 jyu˩4.

I really don't like to eat fish.

係喎。我而家知。

hai˩6 wo˩3. ngo˩5 ji˩4 gaa˩1 zi˩1.

Yea. Now I know.

鋪 頭

pou-3 tau-2

Shop (place)

一 間 鋪 頭

jat-1 gaan-1 pou-3 tau-2

A shop

超級市場

ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅ coeng₄

Supermarket

一間超級市場

jat⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅ coeng₄

A supermarket

嗰間舖頭喺嗰間超級市場
場嘅隔離。

go⁻² gaan⁻¹ pou⁻³ tau⁻² hai⁻² go⁻² gaan⁻¹ ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅
coeng₄ ge⁻³ gaak⁻³ lei₄.

That shop is next to that supermarket.

仔

zai⁻²

Son

女

neoi₅

Daughter

仔 女

zai⁻² neoi₅

Children

你 有 冇 仔 女 呀？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ zai⁻² neoi₅ aa₄?

Do you have children?

有·我有一個仔一個女·

jau₅. ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃ zai⁻² jat⁻¹ go₋₃ nei₅.

Yes. I have a son and a daughter.

開

hoi⁻¹

Open

心

sam⁻¹

Heart

開心

hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹

Happy (Open Heart)

問

man₋₆

To ask

問題

man₋₆ tai₋₄

Question. Problem.

一個問題

jat⁻¹ go₋₃ man₋₆ tai₋₄

A question

我有一個問題。

ngo₋₅ jau₋₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃ man₋₆ tai₋₄.

I have a question.

我 有 一 個 問 題 . 你 鍾 唔
鍾 意 食 魚 ?

ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃ man₋₆ tai₋₄ nei₅ zung⁻¹ m₋₄ zung⁻¹
ji₋₃ sik₋₆ jyu₋₄?

I have a question. Do you like to eat fish?

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Ending Particles: 啊 + 喎

The 啊 (aa-3) ending particle can be used when you want to show agreement or consensus with what the other person said, and you can use the 喎 (wo-3) when you want to show that there is something that you realized, or maybe something that may be important. Something to keep in mind is that sometimes many different particles may either sound the same, or can be used interchangeably with some other particles, almost making them generic and used more as a filler to make the sentence sound softer and nicer.

等陣，你係美國人咩?!

dang⁻² zan₋₆, nei₋₅ hai₋₆ mei₋₅ gwok⁻³ jan₋₄ me⁻¹?!

Wait a second, you're American?!

係喎。

hai₋₆ wo⁻³.

Yea.

好啊。

hou⁻² aa⁻³.

Alright.

A Question Or Problem With: 問題

The word 問題 (man₋₆ tai₋₄) can mean either a **question** or it can mean a **problem**. The meaning depends on the context.

我想問你一個問題。

ngo₅ soeng⁻² man₋₆ nei₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃ man₋₆ tai₋₄.

I want to ask you a question.

我有一個問題。

ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃ man₋₆ tai₋₄.

I have a question/problem.

你有冇問題？

nei₅ jau₅ mou₅ man₋₆ tai₋₄?

Do you have a question/problem?

有問題。

jau₅ man₋₆ tai₋₄.

I have a question/problem.

冇問題

mou₅ man₆ tai₄

I don't have a question/problem.

"Long Time No See" And Its Influence On English: 好耐冇見

In English, it's common to sometimes hear people say **Long Time No See**. There's evidence⁵ to indicate that this may have come from Chinese, most likely through Chinese immigration into the United States and other Western countries over the past few centuries. If you think about it, saying **Long Time No See** feels like a phrase that has some words missing. However, if you look at the cadence of how you say it in English, you'll see that it is a 4 word phrase. If you look at the corresponding example on the Chinese side, 好耐冇見 (hou² noi₆ mou₅ gin⁻³), we can see that it's a direct translation. The ultimate origin of how this phrase came into the English language hasn't yet been discovered.

⁵<https://www.npr.org/sections/codeswitch/2014/03/09/288300303/who-first-said-long-time-no-see-and-in-which-language>

Greeting Someone With: 點呀

In Cantonese, a common way of greeting someone and asking how they are is by using 點呀 (dim^{-2} aa_{-4}) or combining it with 你好 ($\text{nei}_{,5}$ hou^{-2}) as a follow up. However, it's uncommon to say 你好嗎 ($\text{nei}_{,5}$ hou^{-2} maa^{-1}) and is not colloquial. Cantonese actually doesn't use the 嗎 (maa^{-1}) ending particle at all in spoken speech as is used in Standard Chinese when asking questions. Instead, it uses the **X not X** pattern that we have seen before, pretty much exclusively in the language, like 係唔係 (hai_{-6} m_{-4} hai_{-6}) or 識唔識 (sik^{-1} m_{-4} sik^{-1}).

你好! 點呀?

$\text{nei}_{,5}$ hou^{-2} ! dim^{-2} aa_{-4} ?

Hello! How are you?

點呀?

dim^{-2} aa_{-4} ?

What's up?

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你好！好耐冇見！你點呀？

乙

早晨！好耐冇見。我好好。

你呢？

甲

我都好。你屋企人都好？

乙

佢哋都好. 你嘅呢?

甲

佢哋都好. 你而家有冇
子女呀?

乙

冇. 我仲冇子女. 你呢?

甲

我而家有兩個仔三個
女。

乙

你真係有好多子女。你
要買好多嘢食。

甲

哈哈係啲. 我而家有好多錢所以冇問題.

乙

我好開心見到你但係而家要走啦. 再見.

甲

我都好開心見到你。再
見！

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你好！好耐冇見！你點呀？

nei₅ hou⁻²! hou⁻² noi₋₆ mou₅ gin⁻³! nei₅ dim⁻² aa₋₄?

Hello! Long time no see! How you been?

乙

早晨！好耐冇見。我好好。
你呢？

zou⁻² san₋₄! hou⁻² noi₋₆ mou₅ gin⁻³. ngo₅ hou⁻² hou⁻².
nei₅ ne⁻¹?

Good morning! Long time no see. I'm very good. What about you?

甲

我都好。你屋企人都好？

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ hou⁻². nei₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan₄ dou⁻¹ hou⁻²?

I'm also good. Is your family also doing well?

乙

佢哋都好。你嘅呢？

keoi₅ dei⁻² dou⁻¹ hou⁻². nei₅ ge⁻³ ne⁻¹?

They are also doing well. What about yours?

甲

佢哋都好。你而家有冇
子女呀？

keoi₅ dei⁻² dou⁻¹ hou⁻².nei₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ jau₅ mou₅ zai⁻²
neoi₅ aa₄?

They are all also good. Do you have kids now?

乙

冇。我仲冇子女。你呢？

mou₅. ngo₅ zung₆ mou₅ zai⁻² neoi₅. nei₅ ne⁻¹?

I don't. I still don't have children. What about you?

甲

我 而 家 有 兩 個 仔 三 個
女 .

ngo₅ ji₄ gaa⁻¹ jau₅ loeng₅ go⁻³ zai⁻² saam⁻¹ go⁻³ nei₅.

I have 2 sons and 3 daughters now.

乙

你 真 係 有 好 多 仔 女 . 你
要 買 好 多 嘢 食 .

nei₅ zan⁻¹ hai₆ jau₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹ zai⁻² nei₅. nei₅ jiu⁻³
maai₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹ je₅ sik₆.

***You really have a lot of kids. You need to buy a lot of food
to eat.***

甲

哈哈係啲。我而家有好多錢所以冇問題。

haa⁻¹ haa⁻¹ hai₋₆ wo⁻³. ngo₅ ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ jau₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹
cin₋₄ so⁻² ji₅ mou₅ man₋₆ tai₋₄.

Haha Yea, that's true. I have a lot of money now so that's not a problem.

乙

我好開心見到你但係而家要走啦。再見。

ngo₅ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹ gin⁻³ dou⁻² nei₅ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ji₋₄
gaa⁻¹ jiu⁻³ zau⁻² laa⁻¹. zoi⁻³ gin⁻³.

I'm very happy to see you but I have to go now. Take care.

甲

我 都 好 開 心 見 到 你 . 再
見 !

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹ gin⁻³ dou⁻² nei₅ zoi⁻³ gin⁻³!

I'm also happy to see you. Take care!



第二任務

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 2

嗰隻熊貓大過呢隻熊貓

go⁻² zek₋₃ hung₋₄ maau⁻¹ daai₋₆ gwo₋₃ ni⁻¹ zek₋₃ hung₋₄ maau⁻¹

That Panda Is Bigger Than This Panda

熊 貓

hung~4 maau~1

Panda

一 隻 熊 貓

jat~1 zek~3 hung~4 maau~1

A panda

呢 隻 熊 貓 好

ni~1 zek~3 hung~4 maau~1 hou~2

This panda is very

呢 隻 熊 貓 好 大 .

ni~1 zek~3 hung~4 maau~1 hou~2 daai~6.

This panda is very big.

呢隻熊貓好細。

ni⁻¹ zek⁻³ hung⁻⁴ maau⁻¹ hou⁻² sai⁻³.

This panda is very small.

最

zeoi-3

The most

我最鍾意

ngo,5 zeoi-3 zung⁻¹ ji-3

What I like the most is

我最鍾意嘅書

ngo,5 zeoi-3 zung⁻¹ ji-3 ge-3 syu⁻¹

The book I like the most is

我最鍾意嘅書係熊貓
嘅。

ngo,5 zeoi-3 zung⁻¹ ji-3 ge-3 syu⁻¹ hai₋₆ hung₋₄ maau⁻¹ ge-3.

The books I like the most are the panda books.

X Y 過 Z

X Y gwo-3 Z

X is Y more than Z

嗰 隻 熊 貓

go-2 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1

That panda

嗰 隻 熊 貓 大 過

go-2 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1 daai-6 gwo-3

That panda is bigger than

嗰 隻 熊 貓 大 過 呢 隻 熊
貓。

go-2 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1 daai-6 gwo-3 ni-1 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1.

That panda is bigger than this panda.

筆

bat⁻¹

Pen

一枝筆

jat⁻¹ zi⁻¹ bat⁻¹

A pen

呢枝筆好大。

ni⁻¹ zi⁻¹ bat⁻¹ hou⁻² daai₋₆.

This pen is very big.

呢枝筆好細。

ni⁻¹ zi⁻¹ bat⁻¹ hou⁻² sai₋₃.

This pen is very small.

龍

lung₄

Dragon

一條龍

jat⁻¹ tiu₄ lung₄

A dragon

呢條龍好

ni⁻¹ tiu₄ lung₄ hou⁻²

This dragon is very

呢條龍好長。

ni⁻¹ tiu₄ lung₄ hou⁻² coeng₄.

This dragon is very long.

呢 條 龍 好 短。

ni⁻¹ tiu_{~4} lung_{~4} hou⁻² dyun⁻².

This dragon is very short (length).

呢 條 龍 好 高。

ni⁻¹ tiu_{~4} lung_{~4} hou⁻² gou⁻¹.

This dragon is very tall.

呢 條 龍 好 矮。

ni⁻¹ tiu_{~4} lung_{~4} hou⁻² ai⁻².

This dragon is very short (height).

記得

gei-3 dak⁻¹

To remember

唔記得

m-4 gei-3 dak⁻¹

To forget (not remember)

我記得

ngo,5 gei-3 dak⁻¹

I remember

我記得你講俾我知

ngo,5 gei-3 dak⁻¹ nei,5 gong⁻² bei⁻² ngo,5 zi⁻¹

I remember you told me

我記得你講俾我知你愛
我。

ngo₅ gei₋₃ dak⁻¹ nei₅ gong⁻² bei⁻² ngo₅ zi⁻¹ nei₅ oi₋₃ ngo₅.

I remember you told me that you love me.

唔好

m₄ hou⁻²

Do not

唔好去

m₄ hou⁻² heoi⁻³

Do not go

唔好唔記得去舖頭

m₄ hou⁻² m₄ gei⁻³ dak⁻¹ heoi⁻³ pou⁻³ tau⁻²

Do not forget to go to the store

唔好唔記得去舖頭買嘢

食。

m₄ hou⁻² m₄ gei⁻³ dak⁻¹ heoi⁻³ pou⁻³ tau⁻² maai₅ je₅ sik₆.

Do not forget to go to the store to buy something to eat.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

To Remember / To Forget: 記得 + 唔記得

If you want to say **To remember**, you'll say 記得 (gei-3 dak⁻¹), if you want to say **To forget**, you can simply negate to **To remember**. Thus, 唔記得 (m-4 gei-3 dak⁻¹) is **To forget**. So you can combine that with **Don't**, to remind someone to make sure to remember (thus not forget) something.

我記得。

ngo⁵ gei-3 dak⁻¹.

I remember.

我唔記得。

ngo⁵ m-4 gei-3 dak⁻¹.

I don't remember.

唔好唔記得。

m-4 hou⁻² m-4 gei-3 dak⁻¹.

Don't forget. (Make sure to remember)

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你覺唔覺得佢嘅電腦細
過你嘅？

乙

我唔覺得佢係佢喺枱上
嘅書大過我嘅。

甲

真係？我見唔到嗰本書。

乙

冇問題。好多人見唔到
嗰本書。

甲

我之前見到嗰本書但係
唔記得喺嗰度。

乙

係啲。我仲未問你如果
你去過嗰間好大嘅超級
市場？

甲

喺熊貓街嘅超級市場
呀？

乙

係啊. 嗰間嘅.

甲

仲未去嗰度但係我會去
啦.

乙

好啊. 再見.

甲

再見。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你覺唔覺得佢嘅電腦細
過你嘅？

nei₅ gok₋₃ m₋₄ gok₋₃ dak⁻¹ keoi₅ ge₋₃ din₋₆ nou₅ sai₋₃
gwo₋₃ nei₅ ge₋₃?

Do you think that his computer is smaller than yours?

乙

我唔覺得佢係佢喺枱上
嘅書大過我嘅。

ngo₅ m₋₄ gok₋₃ dak⁻¹ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ keoi₅ hai⁻² toi₋₄ soeng₋₆
ge₋₃ syu⁻¹ daai₋₆ gwo₋₃ ngo₅ ge₋₃.

***I don't think so but the book that he has on top of the table
is bigger than mine.***

甲

真係？我見唔到嗰本書。

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆? ngo₅ gin⁻³ m₋₄ dou⁻² go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

Really? I didn't see that book.

乙

冇問題。好多人見唔到
嗰本書。

mou₅ man₋₆ tai₋₄. hou⁻² do⁻¹ jan₋₄ gin⁻³ m₋₄ dou⁻² go⁻²
bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

No problem. A lot of people didn't see that book.

甲

我 之 前 見 到 個 本 書 但 係
唔 記 得 喺 個 度 .

ngo₅ zi⁻¹ cin₄ gin₃ dou⁻² go⁻² bun⁻² syu⁻¹ daan₆ hai₆
m₄ gei₃ dak⁻¹ hai⁻² go⁻² dou₆.

I saw that book before but I forgot that it was there.

乙

係 啲。我 仲 未 問 你 如 果
你 去 過 嗰 間 好 大 嘅 超 級
市 場 ？

hai₋₆ wo₋₃ ngo₅ zung₋₆ mei₋₆ man₋₆ nei₅ jyu₋₄ gwo⁻²
nei₅ heoi₋₃ gwo₋₃ go⁻² gaan⁻¹ hou⁻² daai₋₆ ge₋₃ ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹
si₅ coeng₋₄?

Right. I still haven't asked you if you've gone to that big supermarket?

甲

喺 熊 貓 街 嘅 超 級 市 場
呀 ？

hai⁻² hung₋₄ maau⁻¹ gai⁻¹ ge₋₃ ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅ coeng₋₄ aa₋₄?

The supermarket on Panda St?

乙

係啊. 嗰間嘅.

hai₋₆ aa₋₃. go⁻² gaan⁻¹ ge₋₃.

Yea. That one.

甲

仲未去嗰度但係我會去
啦.

zung₋₆ mei₋₆ heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ngo_{,5} wui_{,5}
heoi₋₃ laa⁻¹.

I still haven't gone there but I will go.

乙

好啊。再見。

hou² aa-3. zoi-3 gin-3.

Cool. Take care.

甲

再見。

zoi-3 gin-3.

Take care.



第三任務

dai₋₆ saam⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 3

今日我好開心

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ ngo₅ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹

I'm Very Happy Today

年

nin₋₄

Year

今年

gam⁻¹ nin₋₄

This Year

舊年

gau₋₆ nin₋₄

Last Year (Old Year)

出年

ceot⁻¹ nin₋₄

Next Year (The Year To Happen)

呢 個

ni⁻¹ go⁻³

This

上 個

soeng⁻⁶ go⁻³

Last

下 個

haa⁻⁶ go⁻³

Next

呢 個 月

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ jyut₋₆

This Month

上 個 月

soeng₋₆ go⁻³ jyut₋₆

Last Month

下 個 月

haa₋₆ go⁻³ jyut₋₆

Next Month

號

hou₋₆

Day (Spoken)

日

jat₋₆

Day (Written)

今日

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆

Today

尋日

cam₋₄ jat₋₆

Yesterday (Search Day)

聽日

ting₋₃ jat₋₆

Tomorrow (Listen Day)

前 日

cin₄ jat₆

The Day Before Tomorrow (2 Days Ago)

後 日

hau₆ jat₆

The Day After Tomorrow (2 Days Later)

禮拜

lai₅ baai₃

Week

星期

sing⁻¹ kei₄

Week

呢 個 星 期

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ sing⁻¹ kei₋₄

This Week

上 個 星 期

soeng₋₆ go⁻³ sing⁻¹ kei₋₄

Last Week

下 個 星 期

haa₋₆ go⁻³ sing⁻¹ kei₋₄

Next Week

星 期 一

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ jat⁻¹

Monday (Day 1)

星 期 二

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ ji₋₆

Tuesday (Day 2)

星 期 三

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ saam⁻¹

Wednesday (Day 3)

星 期 四

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ sei₋₃

Thursday (Day 4)

星 期 五

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ ng₋₅

Friday (Day 5)

星 期 六

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ luk₋₆

Saturday (Day 6)

星 期 日

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ jat₋₆

Sunday (Day (of) Sun)

星 期 六 日

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ luk₋₆ jat₋₆

Weekend (Day 6 + Sun)

一月

jat⁻¹ jyut₋₆

January (Month 1)

二月

ji₋₆ jyut₋₆

February (Month 2)

三月

saam⁻¹ jyut₋₆

March (Month 3)

四月

sei⁻³ jyut₋₆

April (Month 4)

五 月

ng₅ jyut₆

May (Month 5)

六 月

luk₆ jyut₆

June (Month 6)

七 月

cat⁻¹ jyut₆

July (Month 7)

八 月

baat⁻³ jyut₆

August (Month 8)

九月

gau² jyut₋₆

September (Month 9)

十月

sap₋₆ jyut₋₆

October (Month 10)

十一月

sap₋₆ jat⁻¹ jyut₋₆

November (Month 11)

十二月

sap₋₆ ji₋₆ jyut₋₆

December (Month 12)

今日

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆

Today (This Day)

今日係

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ hai₋₆

Today is

今日係二零二五年

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ hai₋₆ ji₋₆ ling₋₄ ji₋₆ ng₋₅ nin₋₄

Today is 2025 (Year 2025)

今日係二零二五年一
月

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ hai₋₆ ji₋₆ ling₋₄ ji₋₆ ng₋₅ nin₋₄ jat⁻¹ jyut₋₆

Today is January, 2025 (Year 2025, Month 1)

今日係二零二五年一月
十八號。

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ hai₋₆ ji₋₆ ling₋₄ ji₋₆ ng₋₅ nin₋₄ jat⁻¹ jyut₋₆ sap₋₆
baat₋₃ hou₋₆.

Today is January 18, 2025 (Year 2025, Month 1, Day 18).

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Sunday: 七 --- 日

When saying the days of the week, you use the numbers 1-6 for Monday through Saturday. However, Sunday is special. You don't use the number 7 for it: 七 (cat⁻¹), but rather the character for day: 日 (jat₋₆).



Be Careful With The Tones For Sunday And Monday

Be careful when trying to say Sunday and Monday. They both are flat tones but the only difference is that Sunday is a low flat tone, and Monday is a high flat tone.

Tone 6 vs Tone 1.

星 期 日

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ jat₋₆

Sunday

星 期 一

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ jat⁻¹

Monday

Saying Dates In Writing vs Speaking: 日 --- 號

When you are talking about a date, if you are writing it down, you use the word 日 (jat₋₆), however when you say the date, you use the word 號 (hou₋₆).

今日係十月六日。

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ hai₋₆ sap₋₆ jyut₋₆ luk₋₆ jat₋₆.

Today is October 6th. (Written)

今日係十月六號。

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ hai₋₆ sap₋₆ jyut₋₆ luk₋₆ hou₋₆.

Today is October 6th. (Spoken)

Different Ways Of Saying Week: 星期 --- 禮拜

You can say week in two different ways in Cantonese, and they are both interchangeable: 星期 (sing⁻¹ kei₄) and 禮拜 (lai₅ baai⁻³). The first is more formal than the second but there is no problem in using it all the time.

呢個星期我好開心。

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ sing⁻¹ kei₄ ngo₅ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹.

I'm very happy this week.

呢個禮拜我好開心。

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ lai₅ baai⁻³ ngo₅ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹.

I'm very happy this week.

Big To Small

In Chinese, there is a general philosophy of saying things from big to small, and this includes not only dates, but geographical locations as well. So you would say the year first, then the month, and then the day. For geographical locations you could go from Planet -> Continent -> Country -> State -> City.

二零二五年四月一日

ji₋₆ ling₋₄ ji₋₆ ng₋₅ nin₋₄ sei₋₃ jyut₋₆ jat⁻¹ jat₋₆

April 1, 2025

地球，北美，美國，紐約，布碌侖

dei₋₆ kau₋₄, bak⁻¹ mei₋₅, mei₋₅ gwok₋₃, nau⁻² joek₋₃, bou₋₃ luk⁻¹ leon₋₄

Earth, North America, United States, New York, Brooklyn

Counting Days And Months

When talking about how many months or how many days, take care in specifying it correctly. For example, 三月 (saam⁻¹ jyut₋₆) is March, so you can't say **3 months** like that. You would need to use a classifier with the number: 三個月 (saam⁻¹ go⁻³ jyut₋₆). However, when stating dates, you don't use a classifier, and instead can be said directly. So 三日 (saam⁻¹ jat₋₆) is correct, not 三個日 (saam⁻¹ go⁻³ jat₋₆).

你幾耐鍾意佢？

nei₅ gei⁻² noi₋₆ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ keoi₅?

How long have you liked her?

我三個月鍾意佢。

ngo₅ saam⁻¹ go⁻³ jyut₋₆ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ keoi₅.

I've liked her for 3 months.

你幾時會去香港？

nei₅ gei⁻² si₋₄ wui₅ heoi⁻³ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻²?

When are you going to Hong Kong?

我會五日之後去香港。

ngo₅ wui₅ ng₅ jat₋₆ zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ heoi⁻³ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻².

I'm going to Hong Kong in 5 days.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

今日我會去博物館見
嘢。你想唔想同埋我一
齊去個度？

乙

真係？我好耐冇去博物
館。我想去但係今日有
好多嘢做。

甲

冇問題. 聽日好唔好呀?

乙

聽日好. 再見.

甲

好啊. 再見.

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

今日我會去博物館見
嘢。你想唔想同埋我一
齊去個度？

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ ngo₅ wui₅ heoi⁻³ bok⁻³ mat₋₆ gun⁻² gin⁻³ je₅.
nei₅ soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² tung₋₄ maai₋₄ ngo₅ jat⁻¹ cai₋₄
heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₋₆?

I'm going to the museum today to see stuff. Do you want to go with me together there?

乙

真係？我好耐冇去博物館。
我想去但係今日有好多嘢做。

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆? ngo₅ hou⁻² noi₋₆ mou₅ heoi₋₃ bok₋₃ mat₋₆
gun⁻². ngo₅ soeng⁻² heoi₋₃ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ jau₅
hou⁻² do⁻¹ je₅ zou₋₆.

Really? I haven't been to the museum in a long time. I want to go but I have a lot of stuff to do today.

甲

冇問題。聽日好唔好呀？

mou₅ man₋₆ tai₋₄. ting₋₃ jat₋₆ hou⁻² m₋₄ hou⁻² aa₋₄?

No problem. Is tomorrow ok?

乙

聽日好。再見。

ting-3 jat-6 hou⁻². zoi-3 gin-3.

Tomorrow is good. See you.

甲

好啊。再見。

hou⁻² aa-3. zoi-3 gin-3.

Good. See you.



第四任務

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 4

而家幾點鐘

ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹

What Time Is It Now

點 鐘

dim^{-2} zung^{-1}

O'Clock

點

dim^{-2}

O'Clock

一 點 鐘

jat^{-1} dim^{-2} zung^{-1}

1:00

一 點

jat^{-1} dim^{-2}

1:00

兩 點

loeng₅ dim⁻²

2:00

半

bun-3

Half

一點半

jat⁻¹

dim⁻²

bun-3

1:30

一 分 鐘

jat⁻¹ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹

1 Minute

一 分

jat⁻¹ fan⁻¹

1 Minute

十 五 分 鐘

sap₋₆ ng₋₅ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹

15 Minutes

十 五 分

sap₋₆ ng₋₅ fan⁻¹

15 Minutes

一點零五分鐘

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² ling₄ ng₅ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹

1:05

一點零五分

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² ling₄ ng₅ fan⁻¹

1:05

一點搭一

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² daap₃ jat⁻¹

1:05 (First dot on an analog clock)

一點一

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² jat⁻¹

1:05

一點十分

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² sap₋₆ fan⁻¹

1:10

一點搭二

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² daap₋₃ ji₋₆

1:10 (Second dot on an analog clock)

一點二

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² ji₋₆

1:10

一點十五分

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² sap₋₆ ng₋₅ fan⁻¹

1:15

一點搭三

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² daap₋₃ saam⁻¹

1:15 (Third dot on an analog clock)

一點三

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² saam⁻¹

1:15

一點四十五分

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² sei⁻³ sap⁻⁶ ng⁵ fan⁻¹

1:45

一點搭九

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² daap⁻³ gau⁻²

1:45 (Ninth dot on an analog clock)

一點九

jat⁻¹ dim⁻² gau⁻²

1:45

秒

miu₅

Second

二十六秒

ji₋₆ sap₋₆ luk₋₆ miu₅

26 Seconds

廿六秒

jaa₋₆ aa⁻¹ luk₋₆ miu₅

26 Seconds

一 分 鐘

jat⁻¹ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹

1 minute

一 分 鐘 有

jat⁻¹ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹ jau₅

1 minute has

一 分 鐘 有 六 十 秒。

jat⁻¹ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹ jau₅ luk₆ sap₆ miu₅.

1 minute has 60 seconds.

鐘 頭

zung⁻¹ tau⁻²

Hour

一 個 鐘 頭

jat⁻¹ go⁻³ zung⁻¹ tau⁻²

1 Hour

半 個 鐘 頭

bun⁻³ go⁻³ zung⁻¹ tau⁻²

Half an Hour

兩 個 鐘 頭

loeng⁻⁵ go⁻³ zung⁻¹ tau⁻²

Two Hours

一 日

jat⁻¹ jat₋₆

1 day

一 日 有

jat⁻¹ jat₋₆ jau₅

1 day has

一 日 有 廿 四 個 鐘 頭。

jat⁻¹ jat₋₆ jau₅ jaa₋₆ aa⁻¹ sei₋₃ go₋₃ zung⁻¹ tau⁻².

1 day has 24 hours.

今朝

gam⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

This Morning

尋朝

cam₄ ziu⁻¹

Yesterday Morning (Search Morning)

聽朝

ting₃ ziu⁻¹

Tomorrow Morning (Listen Morning)

今晚

gam⁻¹ maan₅

Tonight

尋晚

cam₄ maan₅

Yesterday Night (Search Night)

聽晚

ting₋₃ maan₅

Tomorrow Night (Listen Night)

朝 早

ziu⁻¹ zou⁻²

Early Morning

晏 晝

aan⁻³ zau⁻³

Afternoon

夜 晚

je⁻⁶ maan⁻⁵

Night

凌 晨

ling⁻⁴ san⁻⁴

Early Dawn

我會

ngo₅ wui₅

I will

我會今朝

ngo₅ wui₅ gam⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

This morning I will

我會今朝十點廿分鐘

ngo₅ wui₅ gam⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ sap₆ dim⁻² jaa₆ aa⁻¹ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹

This morning at 10:20 I will

我會今朝十點廿分鐘去
你屋企。

ngo₅ wui₅ gam⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ sap₆ dim⁻² jaa₆ aa⁻¹ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹

heoi₃ nei₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻².

This morning at 10:20 I will go to your house.

而 家

ji₄ gaa⁻¹

Now

而 家 幾 點 鐘？

ji₄ gaa⁻¹ gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹?

What time is it now?

而 家 九 點 半。

ji₄ gaa⁻¹ gau⁻² dim⁻² bun⁻³.

It's 9:30 now.

幾時

gei⁻² si⁻⁴

When

幾時想去舖頭

gei⁻² si⁻⁴ soeng⁻² heoi⁻³ pou⁻³ tau⁻²

When want to go to the store

你幾時想去舖頭買蘋果？

nei⁻⁵ gei⁻² si⁻⁴ soeng⁻² heoi⁻³ pou⁻³ tau⁻² maai⁻⁵ ping⁻⁴ gwo⁻²?

When do you want to go to the store to buy apple(s)?

我會聽晚八點九去嗰度
買蘋果。

ngo₅ wui₅ ting₋₃ maan₅ baat₋₃ dim⁻² gau⁻² heoi₋₃ go⁻²
dou₋₆ maai₅ ping₋₄ gwo⁻².

Tomorrow night at 8:45 I'll go to the store to buy apple(s).

時間

si₄ gaan⁻¹

Time

要幾多時間

jiu⁻³ gei⁻² do⁻¹ si₄ gaan⁻¹

How much time

你要幾多時間去嗰度？

nei₅ jiu⁻³ gei⁻² do⁻¹ si₄ gaan⁻¹ heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₆?

How much time do you need to go there?

幾耐

gei⁻² noi₋₆

How long

要幾耐去

jiu₋₃ gei⁻² noi₋₆ heoi₋₃

Need how long to go

你要幾耐去個度？

nei₋₅ jiu₋₃ gei⁻² noi₋₆ heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆?

How long do you need to go there?

我要十五分鐘去個度。

ngo₋₅ jiu₋₃ sap₋₆ ng₋₅ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹ heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I need 15 minutes to go there.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Telling Time Based On The Dots Of An Analog Clock

When you tell time, you can either say it directly, or you can tell it by the number of dots on an analog clock. However, I haven't seen people go above 9 when using the analog equivalents.

六 點 零 五 分

luk₋₆ dim⁻² ling₋₄ ng₋₅ fan⁻¹

6:05

六 點 搭 一

luk₋₆ dim⁻² daap₋₃ jat⁻¹

6:05

六 點 一

luk₋₆ dim⁻² jat⁻¹

6:05

六 點 三 十 五 分

luk₋₆ dim⁻² saam⁻¹ sap₋₆ ng₋₅ fan⁻¹

6:35

六 點 搭 七

luk₋₆ dim⁻² daap₋₃ cat⁻¹

6:35

六 點 七

luk₋₆ dim⁻² cat⁻¹

6:35

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

早晨. 你幾點鐘想去我
朋友屋企食嘢?

乙

早晨. 我今朝十點半有
嘢做但係一點九可以.

甲

我一點九唔可以去個
度。四點五十六分呢？

乙

四點五十六分好。再見。

甲

好。再見。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

早晨．你幾點鐘想去我
朋友屋企食嘢？

zou⁻² san₋₄ nei₅ gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹ soeng⁻² heoi⁻³ ngo₅
pang₋₄ jau₅ uk⁻¹ kei⁻² sik₋₆ je₅?

**Good morning. What time do you want to go to my friend's
house to eat?**

乙

早晨．我今朝十點半有
嘢做但係一點九可以。

zou⁻² san₋₄ ngo₅ gam⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ sap₋₆ dim⁻² bun⁻³ jau₅ je₅
zou₋₆ daan₋₆ hai₋₆ jat⁻¹ dim⁻² gau⁻² ho⁻² ji₅.

**Good morning. I have some stuff to do this morning at 10:30,
but I can go at 1:45.**

甲

我一點九唔可以去個
度。四點五十六分呢？

ngo₅ jat⁻¹ dim⁻² gau⁻² m₄ ho⁻² ji₅ heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₆.
sei⁻³ dim⁻² ng₅ sap₆ luk₆ fan⁻¹ ne⁻¹?

I can't go at 1:45. What about 4:56?

乙

四點五十六分好。再見。

sei⁻³ dim⁻² ng₅ sap₆ luk₆ fan⁻¹ hou⁻². zoi⁻³ gin⁻³.

4:56 is good. See you then.

甲

好·再見·

hou². zoi-3 gin-3.

Good. I'll see you then.



第五任務

dai₋₆ ng₅ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 5

你幾點返工

nei₅ gei⁻² dim⁻² faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹

What Time You Start Work

公 司

gung⁻¹ si⁻¹

Company

寫 字 樓

se⁻² zi₋₆ lau₋₄

Office

呢 間 公 司

ni⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ gung⁻¹ si⁻¹

This company

呢 間 公 司 嘅 寫 字 樓

ni⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ gung⁻¹ si⁻¹ ge₋₃ se⁻² zi₋₆ lau₋₄

This company's office

呢間公司嘅寫字樓好靚。

ni⁻¹ gaan⁻¹ gung⁻¹ si⁻¹ ge⁻³ se⁻² zi₋₆ lau₋₄ hou⁻² leng⁻³.

This company's office is very beautiful.

大道

daai₋₆ dou₋₆

Avenue

八大道

baat₋₃ daai₋₆ dou₋₆

8th Avenue

做嘢

zou₋₆ je_{,5}

To work (to do stuff)

你喺邊度做嘢？

nei_{,5} hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆ zou₋₆ je_{,5}?

Where do you work?

我 喺 八 大 道 做 嘢 .

ngo₅ hai² baat₃ daai₆ dou₆ zou₆ je₅.

I work on 8th avenue.

返 工

faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹

To start work

你 幾 點 鐘 返 工 ？

nei⁵ gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹ faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹?

What time do you start work?

我 朝 早 九 點 返 工 。

ngo⁵ ziu⁻¹ zou⁻² gau⁻² dim⁻² faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹.

I start work at 9 o'clock in the morning.

放 工

fong⁻³ gung⁻¹

To get off work

你 幾 點 鐘 放 工 ？

nei^{,5} gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹ fong⁻³ gung⁻¹?

What time do you get off work?

我 五 點 放 工 。

ngo^{,5} ng^{,5} dim⁻² fong⁻³ gung⁻¹.

I get off at 5 o'clock.

多 米 尼 加

do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄ gaa⁻¹

Dominican (Dominican Republic, Country)

共 和 國

gung₋₆ wo₄ gwok₋₃

Republic

多 米 尼 加 共 和 國

do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄ gaa⁻¹ gung₋₆ wo₄ gwok₋₃

Dominican Republic

我 爸 爸 媽 媽 係 多 米 尼 加
人 .

ngo₅ baa⁻¹ baa⁻¹ maa⁻¹ maa⁻¹ hai₆ do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄
gaa⁻¹ jan₄.

My parents are Dominican.

其實

kei₋₄ sat₋₆

Actually

以為

ji₋₅ wai₋₆

I thought/assumed that (incorrectly).

呵

ho⁻²

(Ending Particle: Used to confirm an assumption)

哦

o₋₄

(Sound: Oh)

你係香港人呵？

nei₅ hai₆ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄ ho⁻²?

You are a Hong Konger right?

唔係。我其實係多米尼
加人。

m₄ hai₆ ngo₅ kei₄ sat₆ hai₆ do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄ gaa⁻¹ jan₄.

No. I'm actually Dominican.

哦。我以為你係香港人。

o₄ ngo₅ ji₅ wai₆ nei₅ hai₆ hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻² jan₄.

Oh. I thought you were a Hong Konger.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你好. 你點呀?

乙

好好. 你呢?

甲

我都好. 你今日會唔會

返工呀?

乙

會。我要九點半返工。

甲

九點半好早但係我都要
好早返工。八點九啲。

乙

真係好早。你嘅寫字樓
喺邊度呀？

甲

我嘅寫字樓喺五大道
四十九街。嗰個地區有
好多多米尼加人同中國
人。

乙

真係？我好朋友係多米
尼加人。

甲

哦·好開心·

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你好。你點呀？

nei₅ hou⁻². nei₅ dim⁻² aa₄?

Hello. How are you?

乙

好好。你呢？

hou⁻² hou⁻². nei₅ ne⁻¹?

I'm very good. What about you?

甲

我都好。你今日會唔會
返工呀？

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ hou⁻². nei₅ gam⁻¹ jat₆ wui₅ m₄ wui₅ faan⁻¹
gung⁻¹ aa₄?

I'm also good. Are you going to work today?

乙

會。我要九點半返工。

wui₅. ngo₅ jiu⁻³ gau⁻² dim⁻² bun⁻³ faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹.

Yes. I need to start work at 9:30.

甲

九點半好早但係我都要
好早返工。八點九啲。

gau⁻² dim⁻² bun⁻³ hou⁻² zou⁻² daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ngo₋₅ dou⁻¹ jiu⁻³
hou⁻² zou⁻² faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹. baat⁻³ dim⁻² gau⁻² wo⁻³.

**9:30 is very early but I also need to start work very early. At
8:45.**

乙

真係好早。你嘅寫字樓
喺邊度呀？

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆ hou⁻² zou⁻². nei₋₅ ge⁻³ se⁻² zi₋₆ lau₋₄ hai⁻²
bin⁻¹ dou₋₆ aa₋₄?

That really is very early. Where is your office at?

甲

我嘅寫字樓喺五大道四十九街。嗰個地區有好多多米尼加人同中國人。

ngo₅ ge₃ se⁻² zi₆ lau₄ hai⁻² ng₅ daai₆ dou₆ sei₃
sap₆ gau⁻² gaai⁻¹. go⁻² go₃ dei₆ keoi⁻¹ jau₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹
do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄ gaa⁻¹ jan₄ tung₄ zung⁻¹ gwok₃ jan₄.

My office is on 49th st and 5th avenue. That area has a lot of Dominican and Chinese people.

乙

真係？我好朋友係多米
尼加人。

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆? ngo_{,5} hou⁻² pang₋₄ jau_{,5} hai₋₆ do⁻¹ mai_{,5} nei₋₄
gaa⁻¹ jan₋₄.

Really? My good friend is Dominican.

甲

哦。好開心。

o₋₄. hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹.

Oh. I'm happy.



第六任務

dai₋₆ luk₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 6

我聽講你鍾意嗰個女人

ngo_{,5} ting₋₃ gong⁻² nei_{,5} zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ go⁻² go₋₃ neoi_{,5} jan₋₄

I Heard That You Like That Girl

已 經

ji₅ ging⁻¹

Already

我 已 經 食 咗 飯 .

ngo₅ ji₅ ging⁻¹ sik₆ zo⁻² faan₆.

I already ate dinner.

賣

maai₋₆

To sell

一定

jat⁻¹ ding₋₆

Definitely

梗係

gang⁻² hai₋₆

Definitely. Certainly. Of course.

你想唔想賣呢本書？

nei₋₅ soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² maai₋₆ ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹?

Do you want to sell this book?

梗係啦。我已經睇咗呢
本書。你想唔想買佢？

gang⁻² hai₋₆ laa⁻¹. ngo_{,5} ji_{,5} ging⁻¹ tai⁻² zo⁻² ni⁻¹ bun⁻²
syu⁻¹. nei_{,5} soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² maai_{,5} keoi_{,5}?

Of course. I already read this book. Do you want to buy it?

梗係唔想。我已經有呢
本書。

gang⁻² hai₋₆ m₋₄ soeng⁻². ngo_{,5} ji_{,5} ging⁻¹ jau_{,5} ni⁻¹ bun⁻² syu⁻¹.

Of course not. I already have this book.

司機

si⁻¹ gei⁻¹

Driver

揸

zaa⁻¹

To drive

揸車

zaa⁻¹ ce⁻¹

To drive a vehicle (Car, Bus, Train)

邊個揸緊車？

bin⁻¹ go⁻³ zaa⁻¹ gan⁻² ce⁻¹?

Who is driving the car?

司機揸緊車。
si⁻¹ gei⁻¹ zaa⁻¹ gan⁻² ce⁻¹.

The driver is driving the car.

打算

daa⁻² syun⁻³

To plan

旅遊

leoi⁵ jau⁻⁴

To travel (for leisure)

出差

ceot⁻¹ caai⁻¹

To travel (for business)

加州

gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹

California

你打算去加州旅遊呀？

nei₅ daa⁻² syun₋₃ heoi₋₃ gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹ leoi₅ jau₋₄ aa₋₄?

Are you planning on traveling to California for fun?

唔係。我打算去加州出差。

m₋₄ hai₋₆ ngo₅ daa⁻² syun₋₃ heoi₋₃ gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹ ceot⁻¹ caai⁻¹.

No. I'm planning on traveling to California for business.

聽 講

ting-3 gong²

To have heard

秘 密

bei-3 mat₋₆

Secret

我 聽 講 你 鍾 意 個 女
人 .

ngo₅ ting-3 gong² nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji-3 go⁻² go-3 neoi₅ jan₋₄.

I heard that you like that girl.

係 啲 . 我 鍾 意 佢 但 係 唔
好 講 俾 佢 知 . 呢 個 會 係
我 哋 嘅 秘 密 .

hai₋₆ wo₋₃. ngo_{,5} zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ keoi_{,5} daan₋₆ hai₋₆ m₋₄ hou⁻²
gong⁻² bei⁻² keoi_{,5} zi⁻¹. ni⁻¹ go₋₃ wui_{,5} hai₋₆ ngo_{,5} dei⁻²
ge₋₃ bei₋₃ mat₋₆.

Yea. I like her but don't tell her. This will be out secret.

梗 係 啦 . 我 一 定 唔 會 講
俾 佢 知 .

gang⁻² hai₋₆ laa⁻¹. ngo_{,5} jat⁻¹ ding₋₆ m₋₄ wui_{,5} gong⁻² bei⁻²
keoi_{,5} zi⁻¹.

Of course. I definitely won't tell her.

貴

gwai-3

Expensive

平

ping-4

Cheap

呢條香蕉幾多錢？

ni-1 tiu-4 hoeng-1 ziu-1 gei-2 do-1 cin-4?

How much does this banana cost?

呢條香蕉一百蚊。

ni-1 tiu-4 hoeng-1 ziu-1 jat-1 baak-3 man-1.

This banana costs \$100 dollars.

真係咩?! 好貴啫.

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆ me^{-1?!} hou⁻² gwai₋₃ wo₋₃.

Really?! That's very expensive.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Careful With The Tones For Buying/Selling: 買 + 賣

The only difference between the sound for buying and selling is the tone. Buying is a low rising tone, and selling is a low flat tone. 買 (maai₅) and 賣 (maai₆).

你做咩呀？

nei₅ zou₆ me⁻¹ aa₄?

What do you do?

我買賣嘢。

ngo₅ maai₅ maai₆ je₅.

I buy and sell stuff.

The Different Definitely's: 一定 + 梗係

There are two different “definitely”s that I’ve introduced: 一定 (jat⁻¹ ding₋₆) and 梗係 (gang⁻² hai₋₆). They basically both express the same meaning. 一定 (jat⁻¹ ding₋₆) is more formal, and 梗係 (gang⁻² hai₋₆) is more casual. But feel free to use both of them interchangeably.

佢哋一定會買嘢食。

keoi₅ dei⁻² jat⁻¹ ding₋₆ wui₅ maai₅ je₅ sik₋₆.

They will definitely buy stuff to eat.

我會梗係返工啦。

ngo₅ wui₅ gang⁻² hai₋₆ faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹ laa⁻¹.

Of course I'll be going to work.

Traveling For Fun Or For Business: 旅遊 + 出差

In Cantonese, when you are talking about traveling, you can immediately tell if someone is traveling for fun, or for business by the words that they use. If they say 旅遊 (leoi₅ jau₄), then it's normally for fun/leisure. If they say 出差 (ceot⁻¹ caa⁻¹), it will definitely be for business.

我會去多米尼加旅遊。

ngo₅ wui₅ heoi⁻³ do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄ gaa⁻¹ leoi₅ jau₄.

I'm going to the Dominican Republic for leisure.

佢會去波士頓出差。

keoi₅ wui₅ heoi⁻³ bo⁻¹ si⁻² deon⁻² ceot⁻¹ caai⁻¹.

She is traveling to Boston for business.

Sound Change: 差

The character 差's pronunciation changes from caa^{-1} to $caai^{-1}$ when used in 出差 ($ceot^{-1} caai^{-1}$).

差 唔 多

caa^{-1} $m_{\sim 4}$ do^{-1}

Approximately

出 差

$ceot^{-1}$ $caai^{-1}$

Traveling (for business)

The Flexibility Of: 車

The word for car or vehicle is 車 (ce⁻¹) as introduced in earlier chapters. This is a flexible word and you will be hearing it not just for cars, but also for trains, and other types of vehicles.

我 架 車 好 紅 .

ngo⁵ gaa⁻³ ce⁻¹ hou⁻² hung⁻⁴.

My car is very red.

呢 架 地 鐵 喺 邊 個 ?

ni⁻¹ gaa⁻³ dei⁻⁶ tit⁻³ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ go⁻³?

Which train is this?

呢 個 係 N 車 .

ni⁻¹ go⁻³ hai⁻⁶ N ce⁻¹.

This is the N train.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我一日好想去多米尼加
旅遊但係去嗰度好貴。

乙

幾多錢去嗰度？

甲

三千蚊。

乙

好貴喎！如果去嗰度好
貴，你會去邊度呀？

甲

我覺得去加州好。天氣
好好。

乙

係喎。我都聽講加州嘅
天氣好好。

甲

你要搭飛機幾耐？

乙

六個鐘頭。

甲

你打算去加州？

乙

我打算四月十五號去
個度。

甲

好呀。再見。

乙

再見。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我一日好想去多米尼加
旅遊但係去嗰度好貴。

ngo₅ jat⁻¹ jat₆ hou⁻² soeng⁻² heoi₃ do⁻¹ mai₅ nei₄ gaa⁻¹
leoi₅ jau₄ daan₆ hai₆ heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆ hou⁻² gwai₃.

One day I really want to go on a trip to the Dominican Republic but going there is expensive.

乙

幾多錢去嗰度？

gei⁻² do⁻¹ cin₄ heoi₃ go⁻² dou₆?

How much does it cost to go there?

甲

三千蚊。

saam⁻¹ cin⁻¹ man⁻¹.

\$3,000 dollars

乙

好貴喎！如果去嗰度好
貴，你會去邊度呀？

hou⁻² gwai⁻³ wo⁻³! jy⁻⁴ gwo⁻² heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou⁻⁶ hou⁻² gwai⁻³,
nei⁻⁵ wui⁻⁵ heoi⁻³ bin⁻¹ dou⁻⁶ aa⁻⁴?

**Wow that's very expensive! If it's so expensive to go there,
where will you go?**

甲

我 覺 得 去 加 州 好 . 天 氣
好 好 .

ngo₅ gok₃ dak⁻¹ heoi₃ gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹ hou⁻². tin⁻¹ hei₃
hou⁻² hou⁻².

I think going to California would be good. Very good weather.

乙

係 喎 . 我 都 聽 講 加 州 嘅
天 氣 好 好 .

hai₆ wo₃. ngo₅ dou⁻¹ ting₃ gong⁻² gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹ ge₃ tin⁻¹
hei₃ hou⁻² hou⁻².

Yea. I also heard California's weather is very good.

甲

你要搭飛機幾耐？

nei₅ jiu₃ daap₃ fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹ gei⁻² noi₆?

How long do you need to be on the airplane?

乙

六個鐘頭。

luk₆ go₃ zung⁻¹ tau⁻².

6 hours

甲

你打算去加州？

nei₅ daa⁻² syun₋₃ heoi₋₃ gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹?

You planning to go to California?

乙

我打算四月十五號去個
度。

ngo₅ daa⁻² syun₋₃ sei₋₃ jyut₋₆ sap₋₆ ng₅ hou₋₆ heoi₋₃
go⁻² dou₋₆.

I'm planning to go there on April 15th.

甲

好呀·再見·

hou² aa₄· zoi-3 gin-3.

Good. Take care.

乙

再見·

zoi-3 gin-3.

Take care.



第五幕

dai₋₆ ng₅ mok₋₆

Act 5

禁域

gam₋₃ wik₋₆

Forbidden Realm

第一任務

dai₋₆ jat⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 1

我會瞓覺。早啱我親愛嘅
老婆。

ngo₅ wui₅ fan₋₃ gok₋₃. zou⁻² tau⁻² ngo₅ can⁻¹ oi₋₃ ge₋₃ lou₅ po₋₄.

I'm Going To Sleep Now. Good Night My Dear Wife.

𩇛

gui₋₆

Tired

好 𩇛

hou⁻² gui₋₆

Very tired

今日仲係好𩇛。

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆ zung₋₆ hai₋₆ hou⁻² gui₋₆.

Still tired today

我尋日有好多嘢做。今日
日仲係好𩇛。

ngo₋₅ cam₋₄ jat₋₆ jau₋₅ hou⁻² do⁻¹ je₋₅ zou₋₆. gam⁻¹ jat₋₆
zung₋₆ hai₋₆ hou⁻² gui₋₆.

I had a lot of stuff to do yesterday. (I'm) still tired today.

起身

hei⁻² san⁻¹

To get up (Body rises)

你幾點鐘起身？

nei₅ gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹ hei⁻² san⁻¹?

What time did you get up?

我凌晨三點鐘起身。

ngo₅ ling₄ san₄ saam⁻¹ dim⁻² zung⁻¹ hei⁻² san⁻¹.

I got up at 3 o'clock in the morning.

瞓 覺

fan-3 gok-3

To sleep

醒

seng⁻²

To wake up

你 幾 點 鐘 瞓 覺？ 幾 點 鐘
醒？

nei₅ gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹ fan-3 gok-3? gei⁻² dim⁻² zung⁻¹ seng⁻²?

What time did you go to sleep? What time did you wake up?

我 十 點 半 瞓 覺， 六 點 醒

ngo₅ sap₋₆ dim⁻² bun-3 fan-3 gok-3, luk₋₆ dim⁻² seng⁻²

I went to sleep at 10:30, (and) woke up at 6 o'clock.

老公

lou⁵ gung⁻¹

Husband

老婆

lou⁵ po⁻⁴

Wife

早啱

zou⁻² tau⁻²

Good Night (said to someone you are close to)

親愛

can⁻¹ oi⁻³

Dear

我會瞓覺。早啱我親愛
嘅老婆。

ngo₅ wui₅ fan-3 gok-3. zou⁻² tau⁻² ngo₅ can⁻¹ oi-3 ge-3
lou₅ po₄.

I'm going to sleep. Good night my dear Wife.

早啱我親愛嘅老公。

zou⁻² tau⁻² ngo₅ can⁻¹ oi-3 ge-3 lou₅ gung⁻¹.

Good night my dear Husband.

陪

pui₄

To accompany

想 唔 想 陪 我

soeng² m₄ soeng² pui₄ ngo₅

Want or not want to accompany me

你 想 唔 想 陪 我 去 超 級 市
場 買 嘢 食 ？

nei₅ soeng² m₄ soeng² pui₄ ngo₅ heoi⁻³ ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅

coeng₄ maai₅ je₅ sik₆?

**Do you want to accompany me to the supermarket to buy
something to eat?**

跟

gan⁻¹

To follow. To come with.

想 唔 想 跟 我

soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² gan⁻¹ ngo₅

你 想 唔 想 跟 我 去 超 級 市
場 買 嘢 食 ？

nei₅ soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² gan⁻¹ ngo₅ heoi⁻³ ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅

coeng₋₄ maai₅ je₅ sik₋₆?

**Do you want to come with me to the supermarket to buy
something to eat?**

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Sound Change: 覺得 + 瞓覺

We've seen examples of this before with the 差 (caa⁻¹) character. In Cantonese, a character can sometimes have a different sound based on the word it's being used in.

覺得

gok-3 dak⁻¹

To think. To feel.

瞓覺

fan-3 gok-3

To sleep

我 覺得 我會 瞓 覺。

ngo,5 gok-3 dak⁻¹ ngo,5 wui,5 fan-3 gok-3.

I think I'm going to go to sleep.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我已經好叻所以覺得會
瞓覺先。你呢？你打算幾
點鐘瞓覺？

乙

我會睇電視先。覺得兩
個鐘頭之後會瞓覺。

甲

聽日你會返工呵?

乙

會. 我要七點三起身.

甲

好啊. 早啱我親愛嘅老
婆.

乙

早啱我親愛嘅老公。我
愛你。

甲

我都愛你。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我已經好𦉳所以覺得會
瞓覺先。你呢？你打算幾
點鐘瞓覺？

ngo₅ ji₅ ging⁻¹ hou⁻² gui₆ so⁻² ji₅ gok₋₃ dak⁻¹ wui₅
fan₋₃ gok₋₃ sin⁻¹. nei₅ ne⁻¹? nei₅ daa⁻² syun₋₃ gei⁻² dim⁻²
zung⁻¹ fan₋₃ gok₋₃?

I'm already very tired so I'm going to go to sleep first. What about you? What time are you planning to go to sleep?

乙

我會睇電視先。覺得兩個鐘頭之後會瞓覺。

ngo₅ wui₅ tai⁻² din₆ si₆ sin⁻¹. gok₋₃ dak⁻¹ loeng₅ go₋₃
zung⁻¹ tau⁻² zi⁻¹ hau₆ wui₅ fan₋₃ gok₋₃.

I'm going to watch TV first. I think I'll go to sleep in two hours.

甲

聽日你會返工呵？

ting₋₃ jat₆ nei₅ wui₅ faan⁻¹ gung⁻¹ ho⁻²?

You going to work tomorrow, right?

乙

會·我 要 七 點 三 起 身·

wui₅. ngo₅ jiu₃ cat⁻¹ dim⁻² saam⁻¹ hei⁻² san⁻¹.

Yea. I need to get up at 7:15.

甲

好 啊·早 啱 我 親 愛 嘅 老
婆·

hou⁻² aa₃. zou⁻² tau⁻² ngo₅ can⁻¹ oi₃ ge₃ lou₅ po₄.

Alright. Good night my dear Wife.

乙

早 啱 我 親 愛 嘅 老 公 . 我
愛 你 .

zou⁻² tau⁻² ngo_{,5} can⁻¹ oi⁻³ ge⁻³ lou_{,5} gung⁻¹. ngo_{,5} oi⁻³ nei_{,5}.

Good night my dear Husband. I love you.

甲

我 都 愛 你 .

ngo_{,5} dou⁻¹ oi⁻³ nei_{,5}.

I love you too.



第二任務

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 2

菠蘿包喺邊呀

bo⁻¹ lo₋₄ baau⁻¹ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ aa₋₄

Where The Pineapple Buns At

晏 晝

aan-3 zau-3

Noon

飯

faan-6

Meal. Rice.

晏 晝 飯

aan-3 zau-3 faan-6

Lunch (Noon Meal)

早

zou⁻²

Morning

餐

caan⁻¹

Meal

早餐

zou⁻² caan⁻¹

Breakfast (Morning Meal)

晚

maan₅

Evening/Night

晚餐

maan₅ caan⁻¹

Dinner (Evening Meal)

煮

zyu⁻²

To cook

煮 飯

zyu⁻² faan₋₆

To cook dinner

煲

bou⁻¹

To boil

煲 水

bou⁻¹ seoi⁻²

To boil water

整

zing²

To prepare. To make.

整 三 文 治

zing² saam¹ man₄ zi₆

To make a sandwich

整 茶

zing² caa₄

To make tea

整 嘢 食

zing² je₅ sik₆

To make something to eat

廳

teng⁻¹

Room. Hall.

餐廳

caan⁻¹ teng⁻¹

Restaurant (Meal Hall)

茶餐廳

caa_{~4} caan⁻¹ teng⁻¹

Hong Kong Style Diner

點心

dim² sam¹

Dim Sum

飲茶

jam² caa₄

Yam Cha (lit. To drink tea)

酒樓

zau² lau₄

Chinese Restaurant (Dim Sum / Yam Cha)

茶走

caa₄ zau²

A popular Hong Kong Condensed Milk-based Milk Tea (Yum!)

菠 蘿

bo⁻¹ lo₄

Pineapple

包

baau⁻¹

Bun. Bread. Bag.

菠 蘿 包

bo⁻¹ lo₄ baau⁻¹

Pineapple Bun

腸粉

coeng⁻² fan⁻²

Steamed Rice Roll

燒賣

siu⁻¹ maai₋₆

Cantonese-Style Pork Dumpling (Usually also has Shrimp)

餃子

gaau⁻² zi⁻²

Dumpling(s)

炒

caau²

To stir-fry

炒 飯

caau² faan₋₆

Stir-fried Rice

炒 麵

caau² min₋₆

Stir-fried Noodles

炸

zaa-3

To fry

雞

gai⁻¹

Chicken

炸 雞

zaa-3 gai⁻¹

Fried Chicken

炸 雞 翼

zaa-3 gai⁻¹ jik₋₆

Fried Chicken Wings

燒

siu⁻¹

To roast. To bake. To BBQ.

叉 燒

caa⁻¹ siu⁻¹

BBQ Pork

叉 燒 包

caa⁻¹ siu⁻¹ baau⁻¹

BBQ Pork Buns

請

cing²

To invite. To treat.

請 你 食 飯

cing² nei₅ sik₆ faan₆

Treat you for dinner

我 想 請 你 食 飯 .

ngo₅ soeng² cing² nei₅ sik₆ faan₆.

I want to treat you for dinner.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我好肚餓。而家會煮飯。

你想唔想陪我食飯呀？

乙

梗係啦。多謝。其實我而

家都肚餓。

甲

好啊。我好開心。其實
我食晚餐嗰陣鍾意食點
心。所以我會整餃子，又
燒包，腸粉，同埋燒賣。好
唔好呀？

乙

好啊。如果我哋會食點心，我哋一定要飲茶。你有冇茶？

甲

有，有。

乙

好啊。多謝你請我食飯。

甲

唔使客氣。我哋係好朋友。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我好肚餓。而家會煮飯。
你想唔想陪我食飯呀？

ngo₅ hou⁻² tou₅ ngo₋₆. ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₅ zyu⁻² faan₋₆. nei₅
soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² pui₋₄ ngo₅ sik₋₆ faan₋₆ aa₋₄?

I'm very hungry. I'm going to cook dinner now. Do you want to join me for dinner?

乙

梗係啦。多謝。其實我而
家都肚餓。

gang⁻² hai₋₆ laa⁻¹. do⁻¹ ze₋₆. kei₋₄ sat₋₆ ngo₅ ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹
dou⁻¹ tou₅ ngo₋₆.

Of course. Thank you. Actually, I'm also hungry.

甲

好啊。我好開心。其實
我食晚餐嗰陣鍾意食點心。
所以我會整餃子，叉
燒包，腸粉，同埋燒賣。好
唔好呀？

hou⁻² aa⁻³. ngo₅ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹. kei₄ sat₆ ngo₅ sik₆
maan₅ caan⁻¹ go⁻² zan₆ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ sik₆ dim⁻² sam⁻¹. so⁻²
ji₅ ngo₅ wui₅ zing⁻² gaau⁻² zi⁻², caa⁻¹ siu⁻¹ baau⁻¹, coeng⁻²
fan⁻², tung₄ maai₄ siu⁻¹ maai₆. hou⁻² m₄ hou⁻² aa₄?

Cool. I'm glad. When I eat dinner I actually like eating Dim Sum. So I'm going to make Pork Dumplings, BBQ Pork Buns, Steamed Rice Roll, and Cantonese-Style Pork Dumplings.

乙

好啊。如果我哋會食點心，我哋一定要飲茶。你有冇茶？

hou⁻² aa⁻³. jyu₋₄ gwo⁻² ngo₅ dei⁻² wui₅ sik₋₆ dim⁻²
sam⁻¹, ngo₅ dei⁻² jat⁻¹ ding₋₆ jiu⁻³ jam⁻² caa₋₄. nei₅ jau₅
mou₅ caa₋₄?

Nice. If we are going to eat Dim Sum, we definitely need to drink tea. Do you have tea?

甲

有，有。

jau₅, jau₅.

Yes, I do.

乙

好啊. 多謝你請我食飯.

hou⁻² aa⁻³. do⁻¹ ze₋₆ nei₅ cing⁻² ngo₅ sik₋₆ faan₋₆.

Good. Thank you for treating me for dinner.

甲

唔使客氣. 我哋係好朋友.
友.

m₋₄ sai⁻² haak⁻³ hei⁻³. ngo₅ dei⁻² hai₋₆ hou⁻² pang₋₄ jau₅.

No need to be so polite. We are good friends.



第三任務

dai₋₆ saam⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 3

我要屙尿

ngo₅ jiu₋₃ o⁻¹ niu₋₆

I Gotta Pee

醫 生

ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹

Doctor (Medical)

睇 醫 生

tai⁻² ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹

To go see the doctor

我 要 睇 醫 生 .

ngo⁵ jiu⁻³ tai⁻² ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹.

I need to go see the doctor.

紙

zi⁻²

Paper

醫生紙

ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹ zi⁻²

Doctor's Note (lit. Doctor Paper)

醫生，可唔可以俾醫生
紙我？

ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹, ho⁻² m₄ ho⁻² ji₅ bei⁻² ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹ zi⁻² ngo₅?

Doctor, can you give me a Doctor's Note?

約

joek-3

To make an appointment. Appointment.

約 醫 生

joek-3 ji-1 saang-1

To make a doctor's appointment.

舒 服

syu-1 fuk-6

Comfortable

唔 舒 服

m-4 syu-1 fuk-6

Uncomfortable (feeling sick)

我 唔 舒 服 .

ngo˩5 m˩4 syu˩1 fuk˩6.

I'm not feeling well.

痛

tung-3

Pain. Ache.

頭

tau-2

Head

頭痛

tau-2 tung-3

Headache (lit. Head Hurt)

肚

tou_5

Stomach

肚痛

tou₅ tung₃

Stomachache (lit. Stomach Hurt)

喉嚨

hau₄ lung₄

Throat

喉嚨痛

hau₄ lung₄ tung₃

Sore Throat (lit. Throat Hurt)

感冒

gam⁻² mou₋₆

Cold. Flu.

發燒

faat⁻³ siu⁻¹

Fever

頭暈

tau⁻² wan₋₄

Dizzy

作嘔

zok⁻³ au⁻²

Nausea. Nauseous.

洗

sai⁻²

To wash

手

sau⁻²

Hand

洗 手

sai⁻² sau⁻²

To wash hands

洗 手 間

sai⁻² sau⁻² gaan⁻¹

Bathroom (Formal) (lit. Wash Hands Room)

廁所

ci-3 so⁻²

Toilet (Informal) (Bathroom)

唔該，廁所喺邊度？

m₋₄ goi⁻¹, ci-3 so⁻² hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₋₆?

Excuse me, where is the toilet (Bathroom)?

屙

o⁻¹

To excrete

尿

niu₋₆

Pee. Urine.

屙 尿

o⁻¹ niu₋₆

To pee (Informal)

屎

si⁻²

Poop

屙 屎

o⁻¹ si⁻²

To poop (Informal)

急

gap⁻¹

Urge / Urgent

急 尿

gap⁻¹ niu₋₆

Urge to pee (Informal)

我 急 尿 !

ngo₅ gap⁻¹ niu₋₆!

I need to urgently pee!

急 屎

gap⁻¹ si⁻²

Urge to poop (Informal)

我 急 屎！

ngo˥˩ gap˨˩ si˨˩!

I need to urgently poop!

糖

tong₄

Sugar

病

beng₆

Disease. Sickness.

糖 尿 病

tong₄ niu₆ beng₆

Diabetes (lit. Sweet Urine Disease)

次

ci-3

Frequency/Repetition. Number of Times.

幾次

gei⁻² ci-3

How many times

三次

saam⁻¹ ci-3

3 Times

我 三 次 去 咗 洗 手 間 屙
尿。

ngo₅ saam⁻¹ ci-3 heoi-3 zo⁻² sai⁻² sau⁻² gaan⁻¹ o⁻¹ niu₆.

I went to the bathroom to pee three times.

藥

joek₋₆

Medicine

西 藥

sai⁻¹ joek₋₆

Western Medicine

中 藥

zung⁻¹ joek₋₆

Chinese Medicine

西 藥 房

sai⁻¹ joek₋₆ fong₋₄

Western Pharmacy

叫

giu-3

To call. To be called.

我叫俊樂。

ngo_5 giu-3 zeon-3 lok_6.

I'm called Zeon Lok (My name is Zeon Lok).

姓

sing-3

Last Name (Family Name)

我姓范叫俊樂。

ngo_5 sing-3 faan_6 giu-3 zeon-3 lok_6.

My family name is Faan, and my first name is Zeon Lok.

請

cing²

May I (Formal)

請 問

cing² man₆

May I please ask (Formal)

請 問，你 貴 姓？

cing² man₆, nei₅ gwai₃ sing₃?

May I please ask, what is your honorable name? (Formal)

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Saying That You Are Or Are Not Feeling Well: 舒服 + 唔舒服

When you want to say you are not feeling well, you say 我唔舒服 (ngo₅ m₄ syu⁻¹ fuk₆). However, when you want to say you are feeling well, you don't say 我舒服 (ngo₅ syu⁻¹ fuk₆), but can just say 我好好 (ngo₅ hou⁻² hou⁻²).

你 舒 唔 舒 服 呀?

nei₅ syu⁻¹ m₄ syu⁻¹ fuk₆ aa₄?

Are you feeling ok?

我 好 好 .

ngo₅ hou⁻² hou⁻².

I'm feeling good.

唔 舒 服 . 我 頭 痛 .

m₄ syu⁻¹ fuk₆. ngo₅ tau⁻² tung⁻³.

No I'm not. I have a headache.

Names In Cantonese

When you want to speak about names in Cantonese, the family name always comes first. There are also formal and casual ways of asking for a name. Using 請 (cing⁻²) or saying 你貴姓 (nei_{,5} gwai⁻³ sing⁻³) is considered formal speech.

請問

cing⁻² man₋₆

May I please ask ...

你貴姓？

nei_{,5} gwai⁻³ sing⁻³?

What is your honorable name?

請問，你貴姓？

cing⁻² man₋₆, nei_{,5} gwai⁻³ sing⁻³?

May I please ask what is your honorable name?

我姓范叫俊樂。

ngo_{,5} sing⁻³ faan₋₆ giu⁻³ zeon⁻³ lok₋₆.

My last name is Fan, first name Zeon Lok.

你 叫 乜 嘢 名?

nei₅ giu₃ mat⁻¹ je₅ ming₄?

What is your name? (lit. What are you called)

你 叫 咩 名 呀?

nei₅ giu₃ me⁻¹ ming₄ aa₄?

What is your name? (lit. What are you called)

我 叫 俊 樂 .

ngo₅ giu₃ zeon₃ lok₆.

My name is Zeon Lok. (lit. I'm called ...)

我 叫 范 俊 樂 .

ngo₅ giu₃ faan₆ zeon₃ lok₆.

My name is Faan Zeon Lok. (lit. I'm called ...)

Express The Completeness Of Something: 晒

You can use 晒 (saai-3) to indicate the completeness of what it's connected to.

我食晒三文治。

ngo₅ sik₆ saai-3 saam⁻¹ man₄ zi₆.

I ate all the sandwiches.

我睇晒齣戲。

ngo₅ tai⁻² saai-3 ceot⁻¹ hei-3.

I saw all the movies.

唔該

m₄ goi⁻¹

Thank you. (Service, Assistance)

唔該晒

m₄ goi⁻¹ saai-3

Thank you very much. (Service, Assistance)

多謝

do⁻¹ ze₋₆

Thank you. (Gifts, Compliments)

多謝晒

do⁻¹ ze₋₆ saai₋₃

Thank you very much. (Gifts, Compliments)

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你好。我今朝約到醫生。
唔舒服所以要見佢。

乙

請問，你叫乜嘢名？

甲

我姓 Leong 叫 Bethany.

乙

我搵到你。你九點四約

醫生。

甲

係啲。

乙

好。你可以喺嗰度等醫

生。

甲

唔該。

十五分鐘頭之後

丙

早晨 Bethany. 聽講今日

唔舒服。

甲

係喎。我喉嚨痛同發燒。
覺得我感冒。

丙

好呀。我會俾藥你食。一
日三次食。一個禮拜之
後唔使食。

甲

好。唔該晒醫生。

丙

唔使。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你好。我今朝約到醫生。
唔舒服所以要見佢。

nei₅ hou⁻². ngo₅ gam⁻¹ ziu⁻¹ joek⁻³ dou⁻² ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹. m₄
syu⁻¹ fuk₆ so⁻² ji₅ jiu⁻³ gin⁻³ keoi₅.

Hello. I have an appointment scheduled with the doctor this morning. I'm not feeling well so I need to see him.

乙

請問，你叫乜嘢名？

cing⁻² man₆, nei₅ giu⁻³ mat⁻¹ je₅ ming₄?

What's your name?

甲

我 姓 Leong 叫 Bethany.

ngo₅ sing⁻³ Leong giu⁻³ Bethany.

My last name is Loeng, first name Bethany.

乙

我 搵 到 你 . 你 九 點 四 約
醫 生 .

ngo₅ wan⁻² dou⁻² nei₅ nei₅ gau⁻² dim⁻² sei⁻³ joek⁻³
ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹.

***I found you. You have an appointment scheduled with the
doctor for 9:20.***

甲

係 啎 .

hai₋₆ wo₋₃.

Yes.

乙

好 . 你 可 以 喺 嗰 度 等 醫
生 .

hou⁻². nei₅ ho⁻² ji₅ hai⁻² go⁻² dou₋₆ dang⁻² ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹.

Ok. You can wait for the doctor over there.

甲

唔該。

m₋₄ goi⁻¹.

Thank you.

十五分鐘頭之後

sap₋₆ ng₅ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹ tau⁻² zi⁻¹ hau₋₆

15 Minutes Later

丙

早晨 Bethany. 聽講今日
唔舒服。

zou⁻² san₄ Bethany. ting₃ gong⁻² gam⁻¹ jat₆ m₄ syu⁻¹ fuk₆.

Good morning Bethany. I heard that you weren't feeling well today.

甲

係喎。我喉嚨痛同發燒。
覺得我感冒。

hai₆ wo₃. ngo₅ hau₄ lung₄ tung₃ tung₄ faat₃ siu⁻¹.
gok₃ dak⁻¹ ngo₅ gam⁻² mou₆.

Yes. I have a sore throat and a fever. I think I have a cold.

丙

好呀。我會俾藥你食。一日三次食。一個禮拜之後唔使食。

hou⁻² aa₋₄. ngo₅ wui₅ bei⁻² joek₋₆ nei₅ sik₋₆. jat⁻¹ jat₋₆
saam⁻¹ ci₋₃ sik₋₆. jat⁻¹ go₋₃ lai₅ baai₋₃ zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ m₋₄
sai⁻² sik₋₆.

Alright. I will give you medicine for you to take. Take it three times a day. After one week you don't need to take it.

甲

好。唔該晒醫生。

hou⁻². m₋₄ goi⁻¹ saai₋₃ ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹.

Alright. Thank you very much doctor.

丙

唔使。

m₄ sai².

You're welcome.



第四任務

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 4

我仲要俾錢

ngo₅ zung₋₆ jiu₋₃ bei₋₂ cin₋₄

I Still Need To Pay

開始

hoi⁻¹ ci⁻²

To start

我開始飲茶。

ngo₅ hoi⁻¹ ci⁻² jam⁻² caa₄.

I started to drink tea.

運動

wan₋₆ dung₋₆

Motion

做運動

zou₋₆ wan₋₆ dung₋₆

To exercise (lit. to do motion)

我會做運動。

ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} zou₋₆ wan₋₆ dung₋₆.

I will exercise.

繼續

gai-3 zuk-6

To continue

我會繼續做運動。

ngo,5 wui,5 gai-3 zuk-6 zou-6 wan-6 dung-6.

I will continue to exercise.

票

piu-3

Ticket

飛 機 票

fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹ piu-3

Airplane Ticket

機 票

gei⁻¹ piu-3

Airplane Ticket

一 張 機 票

jat⁻¹ zoeng⁻¹ gei⁻¹ piu-3

1 Airplane Ticket

我 買 咗 一 張 機 票

ngo₅ maai₅ zo⁻² jat⁻¹ zoeng⁻¹ gei⁻¹ piu⁻³

I bought one airplane ticket.

我 買 咗 張 機 票 。

ngo₅ maai₅ zo⁻² zoeng⁻¹ gei⁻¹ piu⁻³.

I bought one airplane ticket.

俾錢

bei⁻² cin₋₄

To pay (to give money)

免費

min₋₅ fai⁻³

Free (Price)

因為呢張機票免費

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆ ni⁻¹ zoeng⁻¹ gei⁻¹ piu⁻³ min₋₅ fai⁻³

Because this ticket was free

因為呢張機票免費，我
唔使俾錢。

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆ ni⁻¹ zoeng⁻¹ gei⁻¹ piu⁻³ min₋₅ fai⁻³, ngo₋₅ m₋₄
sai⁻² bei⁻² cin₋₄.

Because this ticket was free, I don't need to pay.

戲

hei-3

Movie

一齣戲

jat⁻¹ ceot⁻¹ hei-3

A Movie

戲

hei-3

Movie

戲院

hei-3 jyun-2

Movie Theater

一間戲院

jat-1 gaan-1 hei-3 jyun-2

A Movie Theater

你 喺 戲 院 可 以 睇 戲 .

nei-5 hai-2 hei-3 jyun-2 ho-2 ji-5 tai-2 hei-3.

You can watch movies at the movie theater.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我爸爸想請我哋食飯。

禮拜日好唔好呀？

乙

我好開心。我要話俾佢

聽多謝。星期日好。

甲

好。我會講俾佢知。

乙

好. 唔該. 你呢個星期五
會做咩呀?

甲

星期五朝早十一點會做
運動. 之後冇嘢做.

乙

好。其實我想問你如果
你想陪我去睇戲？

甲

真係？梗係拉。一定想去。
但係等我請你。

乙

唔使。啲票免費。我唔使
俾錢。如果要俾錢，一定
唔去。

甲

哦。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我爸爸想請我哋食飯。
禮拜日好唔好呀？

ngo₅ baa⁻¹ baa⁻¹ soeng⁻² cing⁻² ngo₅ dei⁻² sik₆ faan₆ lai₅
baai⁻³ jat₆ hou⁻² m₄ hou⁻² aa₄?

My dad wants to treat us both for dinner. Is Sunday good?

乙

我好開心。我要話俾佢
聽多謝。星期日好。

ngo₅ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹. ngo₅ jiu⁻³ waa⁻² bei⁻² keoi₅ ting⁻³
do⁻¹ ze₆. sing⁻¹ kei₄ jat₆ hou⁻².

I'm very happy. I need to say thank you to him. Sunday is good.

甲

好。我會講俾佢知。

hou⁻². ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} gong⁻² bei⁻² keoi_{,5} zi⁻¹.

Good. I'll let him know.

乙

好。唔該。你呢個星期五
會做咩呀？

hou⁻². m₋₄ goi⁻¹. nei_{,5} ni⁻¹ go⁻³ sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ ng_{,5} wui_{,5}
zou₋₆ me⁻¹ aa₋₄?

Ok. Thank you. What are you doing this Friday?

甲

星 期 五 朝 早 十 一 點 會 做
運 動 . 之 後 冇 嘢 做 .

sing⁻¹ kei₄ ng₅ ziu⁻¹ zou⁻² sap₆ jat⁻¹ dim⁻² wui₅ zou₆
wan₆ dung₆. zi⁻¹ hau₆ mou₅ je₅ zou₆.

I'm going to exercise at 11 in the morning. I don't have anything to do afterwards.

乙

好 . 其 實 我 想 問 你 如 果
你 想 陪 我 去 睇 戲 ?

hou⁻². kei₄ sat₆ ngo₅ soeng⁻² man₆ nei₅ jyu₄ gwo⁻² nei₅
soeng⁻² pui₄ ngo₅ heoi₃ tai⁻² hei₃?

Good. I actually wanted to ask you if you wanted to go see a movie with me?

甲

真係？梗係拉。一定想去。
但係等我請你。

zan⁻¹ hai₋₆? gang⁻² hai₋₆ laai⁻¹. jat⁻¹ ding₋₆ soeng⁻² heoi₋₃.
daan₋₆ hai₋₆ dang⁻² ngo_{,5} cing⁻² nei_{,5}.

Really? Of course. I definitely want to go. But let me treat you.

乙

唔使。啲票免費。我唔使
俾錢。如果要俾錢，一定
唔去。

m₋₄ sai⁻². di⁻¹ piu₋₃ min_{,5} fai₋₃. ngo_{,5} m₋₄ sai⁻² bei⁻² cin₋₄.
jyu₋₄ gwo⁻² jiu₋₃ bei⁻² cin₋₄, jat⁻¹ ding₋₆ m₋₄ heoi₋₃.

No need. The tickets were free. I didn't need to spend any money. If I needed to pay, I definitely wouldn't go.

甲

哦·

0-4·

Oh.



第五任務

dai₋₆ ng₅ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 5

我可以車你去機場

ngo₅ ho⁻² ji₅ ce⁻¹ nei₅ heoi₋₃ gei⁻¹ coeng₋₄

I Can Drive You To The Airport

老師

lou₅ si⁻¹

Teacher

一位老師

jat⁻¹ wai⁻² lou₅ si⁻¹

A teacher

教

gaau-3

To teach

嗰位老師教緊

go⁻² wai⁻² lou₅ si⁻¹ gaau-3 gan⁻²

That teacher is teaching

嗰位老師教緊嗰啲學生
寫字。

go⁻² wai⁻² lou₅ si⁻¹ gaau-3 gan⁻² go⁻² di⁻¹ hok₆ saang⁻¹
se⁻² zi₆.

That teacher is teaching those students how to write characters.

律 師

leot₋₆ si⁻¹

Lawyer

文 件

man₋₄ gin₋₆

Document

嗰 啲 律 師 寫 緊 文 件 。

go⁻² di⁻¹ leot₋₆ si⁻¹ se⁻² gan⁻² man₋₄ gin₋₆.

Those lawyers are writing documents.

行

hang₋₄

To walk

我會行個度。

ngo_{,5} wui_{,5} hang₋₄ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I will walk over there.

一直

jat⁻¹ zik₋₆

Straight

我會一直行個度。

ngo₅ wui₅ jat⁻¹ zik₋₆ hang₋₄ go⁻² dou₋₆.

I will walk straight there.

馬

maa₅

Horse

路

lou₆

Path

馬 路

maa₅ lou₆

Road (Horse Path)

一 條 馬 路

jat⁻¹ tiu₄ maa₅ lou₆

A road

我 喺 呢 條 馬 路 一 直 行。
ngo₅ hai⁻² ni⁻¹ tiu₄ maa₅ lou₆ jat⁻¹ zik₆ hang₄.

I am walking straight on this road.

塞

sak⁻¹

To obstruct

塞 車

sak⁻¹ ce⁻¹

Traffic Jam

呢 條 馬 路 塞 車 .

ni⁻¹ tiu₄ maa₅ lou₆ sak⁻¹ ce⁻¹.

This road is blocked by traffic.

鼻

bei₋₆

Nose

鼻塞

bei₋₆ sak⁻¹

Stuffy Nose. Congestion. (Blocked Nose)

因為我感冒，我鼻塞啦。

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆ ngo₅ gam⁻² mou₋₆ ngo₅ bei₋₆ sak⁻¹ laa⁻¹.

Because I have a cold, my nose is blocked.

停

ting₄

To stop

喺 嗰 度 停 車 .

hai⁻² go⁻² dou₆ ting₄ ce⁻¹.

Stop the car over there.

轉

zyun-3

To turn

燈

dang⁻¹

Light

紅 綠 燈

hung⁻⁴ luk⁻⁶ dang⁻¹

Traffic Light (lit. Red Green Light)

泊 車

paak-3 ce⁻¹

To park

喺 嗰 個 紅 綠 燈 轉 右

hai⁻² go⁻² go⁻³ hung₋₄ luk₋₆ dang⁻¹ zyun⁻³ jau⁻²

Turn right at that traffic light

喺 嗰 個 紅 綠 燈 轉 右 就 泊
車 啦。

hai⁻² go⁻² go⁻³ hung₋₄ luk₋₆ dang⁻¹ zyun⁻³ jau⁻² zau₋₆ paak⁻³
ce⁻¹ laa⁻¹.

Turn right at that traffic light and then park the car.

得閒

dak⁻¹ haan_{~4}

To be available (to have free time)

你而家得唔得閒呀？

nei_{~5} ji_{~4} gaa⁻¹ dak⁻¹ m_{~4} dak⁻¹ haan_{~4} aa_{~4}?

Are you available now?

我而家唔得閒。

ngo_{~5} ji_{~4} gaa⁻¹ m_{~4} dak⁻¹ haan_{~4}.

I'm not available right now.

忙

mong₋₄

To be busy

你 而 家 忙 唔 忙 呀？

nei₅ ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ mong₋₄ m₋₄ mong₋₄ aa₋₄?

Are you busy now?

我 而 家 好 忙。

ngo₅ ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ hou⁻² mong₋₄.

I'm very busy now.

飛機

fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹

Airplane

飛機場

fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹ coeng₋₄

Airport (lit. Airplane Field)

機場

gei⁻¹ coeng₋₄

Airport

車

ce⁻¹

To drive someone (slang) (lit. Car)

我可以車你去機場。

ngo₅ ho⁻² ji₅ ce⁻¹ nei₅ heoi⁻³ gei⁻¹ coeng₋₄.

I can drive you to the airport.

話

waa²

To say

佢話佢唔知。

keoi₅ waa² keoi₅ m₄ zi⁻¹.

She said she doesn't know.

一

jat⁻¹

1

一 到

jat⁻¹ dou⁻²

1 to

一 到 九

jat⁻¹ dou⁻² gau⁻²

1 to 9

我到咗

ngo˥˩ dou˨˩ zo˨˩

I've arrived.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

Multiple Ways To Say A Block: 街 + 紅綠燈

You can represent a block by either just saying a **street**, 街 (gai⁻¹), or you can say a traffic light, 紅綠燈 (hung₋₄ luk₋₆ dang⁻¹). Thus, three traffic lights is a representation of three blocks.

兩條街

loeng₅ tiu₋₄ gai⁻¹

Two blocks

兩個紅綠燈

loeng₅ go₋₃ hung₋₄ luk₋₆ dang⁻¹

Two blocks

To Drive Someone Using The Word: 車

In Cantonese, you can use the noun for car, 車 (ce⁻¹), as a verb, which turns it into a convenient way to say you are driving someone.

我想車你返屋企。

ngo₅ soeng⁻² ce⁻¹ nei₅ faan⁻¹ uk⁻¹ kei⁻².

I want to drive you back home. (lit. I want to car you back home)

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

我六點半放工。真係想
去睇戲。

乙

係啎。我一定可以飲一
杯啤酒。你想唔想睇戲
之後飲酒？

甲

可以啦。我可以車你去
個度。

乙

唔該晒。你知唔知點去
個度？

甲

唔知，但係可以睇吓我
嘅地圖。

乙

好。

甲

地圖話我哋要揸車二十
個紅綠燈，轉左，之後繼
續揸五條街就落車。仲
要行五分鐘就到。

乙

好啊。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

我六點半放工。真係想去睇戲。

ngo₅ luk₆ dim⁻² bun₃ fong₃ gung⁻¹. zan⁻¹ hai₆ soeng⁻²
heoi₃ tai⁻² hei₃.

I get off work at 6:30. I really want to go watch a movie.

乙

係 啲 . 我 一 定 可 以 飲 一
杯 啤 酒 . 你 想 唔 想 睇 戲
之 後 飲 酒 ?

hai₋₆ wo₋₃. ngo_{,5} jat⁻¹ ding₋₆ ho⁻² ji_{,5} jam⁻² jat⁻¹ bui⁻¹
be⁻¹ zau⁻². nei_{,5} soeng⁻² m₋₄ soeng⁻² tai⁻² hei₋₃ zi⁻¹ hau₋₆
jam⁻² zau⁻²?

***Yea. I really could drink a beer. Do you want to watch a movie
and then go drink alcohol?***

甲

可 以 啦 . 我 可 以 車 你 去
個 度 .

ho⁻² ji_{,5} laa⁻¹. ngo_{,5} ho⁻² ji_{,5} ce⁻¹ nei_{,5} heoi₋₃ go⁻² dou₋₆.

Yea I can. I can drive you over there.

乙

唔該晒。你知唔知點去
個度？

m_{~4} goi⁻¹ saai⁻³. nei₅ zi⁻¹ m_{~4} zi⁻¹ dim⁻² heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₆?

Thank you very much. Do you know how to go there?

甲

唔知，但係可以睇吓我
嘅地圖。

m_{~4} zi⁻¹, daan₆ hai₆ ho⁻² ji₅ tai⁻² haa⁻² ngo₅ ge⁻³
dei₆ tou₄.

I don't but I can take a look at my map.

乙

好。

hou².

Alright.

甲

地圖話我哋要揸車二十
個紅綠燈，轉左，之後繼
續揸五條街就落車。仲
要行五分鐘就到。

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ waa⁻² ngo₅ dei⁻² jiu₋₃ zaa⁻¹ ce⁻¹ ji₋₆ sap₋₆
go₋₃ hung₋₄ luk₋₆ dang⁻¹, zyun₋₃ zo⁻², zi⁻¹ hau₋₆ gai₋₃ zuk₋₆
zaa⁻¹ ng₅ tiu₋₄ gaai⁻¹ zau₋₆ lok₋₆ ce⁻¹. zung₋₆ jiu₋₃ hang₋₄
ng₅ fan⁻¹ zung⁻¹ zau₋₆ dou⁻².

The map says we need to drive the car for 20 blocks, turn left, and then afterwards continue driving for 5 blocks, then we off the car. We still need to walk 5 minutes, and then we'll be there.

乙

好啊。

hou² aa-3.

Alright, sounds good.



第六任務

dai₋₆ luk₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 6

着件褸定帶手套

zoek₋₃ gin₋₆ lau⁻¹ ding₋₆ daai₋₃ sau⁻² tou₋₃

Wear The Jacket Or Wear The Gloves

衫

saam⁻¹

Shirt

一件衫

jat⁻¹ gin₋₆ saam⁻¹

A shirt

着

zoek-3

To wear (for stuff worn directly on your body)

我 着 一 件 衫

ngo₅ zoek-3 jat⁻¹ gin₆ saam⁻¹

I wear a shirt.

我 着 件 衫

ngo₅ zoek-3 gin₆ saam⁻¹

I wear a shirt.

褸

lau⁻¹

Jacket

一件褸

jat⁻¹ gin₋₆ lau⁻¹

A jacket

我會着件褸。

ngo₅ wui₅ zoek₋₃ gin₋₆ lau⁻¹.

I'm going to wear a jacket.

牛仔

ngau₄ zai⁻²

Cowboy

牛仔褲

ngau₄ zai⁻² fu₋₃

Jeans (lit. Cowboy Pants)

一條牛仔褲

jat⁻¹ tiu₄ ngau₄ zai⁻² fu₋₃

A pair of jeans

帶

daai-3

To wear (for accessories, stuff worn on your extremities)

帽

mou⁻²

Hat

一 頂 帽

jat⁻¹

deng⁻²

mou⁻²

A hat

我 帶 一 頂 帽 .

ngo_{,5}

daai-3

jat⁻¹

deng⁻²

mou⁻².

I wear a hat.

我帶頂帽。

ngo₅ daai-3 deng² mou².

I wear a hat.

我帶手套。

ngo₅ daai-3 sau² tou-3.

I wear gloves.

我帶襪。

ngo₅ daai-3 mat₋₆.

I wear socks.

對

deoi-3

A pair

一對襪

jat⁻¹ deoi-3 mat₋₆

A pair of socks.

一對手套

jat⁻¹ deoi-3 sau⁻² tou-3

A pair of gloves.

一隻襪

jat⁻¹ zek-3 mat₋₆

A single sock.

一隻手套

jat⁻¹ zek-₃ sau⁻² tou-₃

A single glove.

尋 寶

cam₄ bou²

Searching For Treasures

The Different Verbs For Wearing Something: 帶 + 着

In Cantonese, the verb you use for wearing depends on where on the body the thing you are wearing is located in. If it's in your extremities (usually accessories), then you will use 帶 (daai-3), if it's on your body directly (like a coat, dress, shirt), then you use 着 (zoek-3).

我 着 頂 帽 .

ngo,5 zoek-3 deng² mou².

I wear the hat.

我 帶 領 呔 .

ngo,5 daai-3 ling,5 taai¹.

I wear the tie.

大佬

daai₋₆ lou⁻²

Boss

甲

你覺唔覺得你媽媽會鍾
意呢頂紅色帽？

乙

佢唔鍾意紅色啲嘢。不
如你買綠色嘅？

甲

綠色嘅都好靚。襪呢？你
覺唔覺得佢會鍾意呢對
黃色嘅襪？

乙

會。綠色嘅頂帽同黃色
嘅襪好靚。我會係好開
心。

甲

好啊。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

甲

你覺唔覺得你媽媽會鍾
意呢頂紅色帽？

nei₅ gok⁻³ m₄ gok⁻³ dak⁻¹ nei₅ maa⁻¹ maa⁻¹ wui₅ zung⁻¹
ji⁻³ ni⁻¹ deng⁻² hung₄ sik⁻¹ mou⁻²?

Do you think your mom is going to like this red hat?

乙

佢唔鍾意紅色啲嘢。不
如你買綠色嘅？

keoi₅ m₄ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ hung₄ sik⁻¹ di⁻¹ je₅ bat⁻¹ jyu₄ nei₅
maai₅ luk₆ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³?

She doesn't like red stuff. Why don't you buy the green one?

甲

綠色嘅都好靚。襪呢？你
覺唔覺得佢會鍾意呢對
黃色嘅襪？

luk₋₆ sik⁻¹ ge₋₃ dou⁻¹ hou⁻² leng₋₃ mat₋₆ ni⁻¹? nei₋₅ gok₋₃
m₋₄ gok₋₃ dak⁻¹ keoi₋₅ wui₋₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ ni⁻¹ deoi₋₃ wong₋₄
sik⁻¹ ge₋₃ mat₋₆?

The green one is also beautiful. What about socks? Do you think she will like this pair of yellow socks?

乙

會· 綠 色 嘅 頂 帽 同 黃 色
嘅 襪 好 靚· 我 會 係 好 開
心·

wui₅. luk₆ sik⁻¹ ge₃ deng⁻² mou⁻² tung₄ wong₄ sik⁻¹ ge₃
mat₆ hou⁻² leng₃. ngo₅ wui₅ hai₆ hou⁻² hoi⁻¹ sam⁻¹.

She will. The green hat and yellow socks are beautiful. She will be very happy.

甲

好啊。

hou² aa-3.

Nice.



搵 唔 到 啲 地 牢
wan⁻² m₄ dou⁻² di⁻¹ dei₋₆ lou₋₄

The Lost Dungeons

Weshly 嘅古仔

Weshly ge-3 gu-2 zai-2

Weshly's Story

第一任務

dai₋₆ jat⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 1

醒

seng⁻²

Awakening

Weshly

你好。我叫 Weshly。我係
一隻龍貓。今年我八歲。
我有兄弟姊妹，但係我
有一個好愛我爸爸媽
媽。

Weshly

我都好愛佢咗. 我希望
你會鍾意跟我嘅古仔.

下次見!

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

Weshly

你好。我叫 Weshly。我係
一隻龍貓。今年我八歲。
我冇兄弟姊妹，但係我
有一個好愛我爸爸媽
媽。

nei₅ hou⁻². ngo₅ giu₋₃ Weshly. ngo₅ hai₋₆ jat⁻¹ zek₋₃
lung₋₄ maau⁻¹. gam⁻¹ nin₋₄ ngo₅ baat₋₃ seoi₋₃. ngo₅ mou₅
hing⁻¹ dai₋₆ zi⁻² mui₋₆, daan₋₆ hai₋₆ ngo₅ jau₅ jat⁻¹ go₋₃
hou⁻² oi₋₃ ngo₅ baa⁻¹ baa⁻¹ maa⁻¹ maa⁻¹.

Hello. My name is Weshly. I am a Chinchilla. This year I am 8 years old. I don't have any brothers and sisters, but I have parents who love me.

Weshly

我 都 好 愛 佢 哋 . 我 希 望
你 會 鍾 意 跟 我 嘅 古 仔 .
下 次 見 !

ngo₅ dou⁻¹ hou⁻² oi₋₃ keoi₅ dei⁻². ngo₅ hei⁻¹ mong₋₆ nei₅
wui₅ zung⁻¹ ji₋₃ gan⁻¹ ngo₅ ge₋₃ gu⁻² zai⁻². haa₋₆ ci₋₃ gin₋₃!

***I also love them. I hope that you like following my story. See
you next time!***



第 二 任 務

dai₋₆ ji₋₆ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 2

深 淵

sam⁻¹ jyun⁻¹

Abyss

Weshly

我 喺 邊 度？ 呢 度 喺 邊 度？

個 度 喺 邊 度？ 呢 個 係 乜

嘢？ 個 個 係 乜 嘢？ 呢 啲 係

乜 嘢？

Weshly

嗰啲係乜嘢？我開啲眼
嗰陣會見到乜嘢？或者
芒果？或者香蕉？我唔
知。

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

Weshly

我 係 邊 度? 呢 度 係 邊 度?
個 度 係 邊 度? 呢 個 係 乜
嘢? 個 個 係 乜 嘢? 呢 啲 係
乜 嘢?

ngo₅ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆? ni⁻¹ dou₆ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆? go⁻²
dou₆ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆? ni⁻¹ go⁻³ hai₆ mat⁻¹ je₅? go⁻²
go⁻³ hai₆ mat⁻¹ je₅? ni⁻¹ di⁻¹ hai₆ mat⁻¹ je₅?

***Where am I? Where is here? Where is there? What is this?
What is that? What are these?***

Weshly

嗰啲係乜嘢？我開啲眼
嗰陣會見到乜嘢？或者
芒果？或者香蕉？我唔
知。

go⁻² di⁻¹ hai₋₆ mat⁻¹ je_{,5}? ngo_{,5} hoi⁻¹ di⁻¹ ngaan_{,5} go⁻²
zan₋₆ wui_{,5} gin⁻³ dou⁻² mat⁻¹ je_{,5}? waak₋₆ ze⁻² mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²?
waak₋₆ ze⁻² hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹? ngo_{,5} m₋₄ zi⁻¹.

***What are those? What will I see when I open my eyes? Maybe
a Mango? Maybe a Banana? I don't know.***



第三任務

dai₋₆ saam⁻¹ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 3

生果

saang⁻¹ gwo⁻²

Fruits

Weshly

唔該，我想買啲芒果同
埋香蕉。知唔知喺邊度
可以買呀？

Person

知。你可以喺三十五街
嘅舖頭買。

Weshly

佢咁啲生果好唔好食？

Person

好食。好新鮮喎。

Weshly

唔該晒。而家會去嗰度

買啲生果。拜拜！

Person

唔使唔該. 拜拜!

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

Weshly

唔該，我想買啲芒果同
埋香蕉。知唔知喺邊度
可以買呀？

m₄ goi⁻¹, ngo₅ soeng⁻² maai₅ di⁻¹ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² tung₄
maai₄ hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹. zi⁻¹ m₄ zi⁻¹ hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆ ho⁻²
ji₅ maai₅ aa₄?

Excuse me, I want to buy some Mangos and Bananas. Do you know where I can buy them?

Person

知. 你 可 以 喺 三 十 五 街
嘅 舖 頭 買 .

zi⁻¹. nei₅ ho⁻² ji₅ hai⁻² saam⁻¹ sap₋₆ ng₅ gaai⁻¹ ge⁻³
pou⁻³ tau⁻² maai₅.

Yes I know. You can buy them at the 35th st store.

Weshly

佢 哋 啲 生 果 好 唔 好 食 ?

keoi₅ dei⁻² di⁻¹ saang⁻¹ gwo⁻² hou⁻² m₋₄ hou⁻² sik₋₆?

Are their fruits delicious?

Person

好食·好新鮮啲。

hou⁻² sik₋₆. hou⁻² san⁻¹ sin⁻¹ wo⁻³.

Very delicious. Very fresh.

Weshly

唔該晒·而家會去嗰度
買啲生果·拜拜!

m₋₄ goi⁻¹ saai⁻³. ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ wui₋₅ heoi⁻³ go⁻² dou₋₆ maai₋₅
di⁻¹ saang⁻¹ gwo⁻². baai⁻¹ baai⁻³!

***Thank you very much. I'm going to go there now to buy the
fruits. Bye bye!***

Person

唔使唔該。拜拜！

m₄ sai⁻² m₄ goi⁻¹. baai⁻¹ baai⁻³!

You're welcome. Bye bye!



第四任務

dai₋₆ sei₋₃ jam₋₆ mou₋₆

Quest 4

超級市場

ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si₅ coeng₋₄

Supermarket

Weshly

早晨. 我而家搵緊啲嘢.

可唔可以幫我手呀?

Staff

梗係啦! 你搵緊乜嘢呀?

Weshly

我搵緊兩條魚, 三條龍,

四隻雞, 同十粒提子.

Staff

哈哈. 我哋一定冇龍. 你
好笑. 但係我哋有魚, 雞,
同提子. 你鍾意綠色嘅
提子定係紅色嘅?

Weshly

兩個都鍾意食. 喺邊度
可以搵到啲嘢?

Staff

喺呢度會搵到雞，喺個
度會搵到魚同提子。

Weshly

好吖。唔該晒。

Staff

唔使唔該。你走之前想
俾芒果盒你。唔使俾錢。

Weshly

哦！多謝！

Staff

唔使。喺盒度可以放到
好多芒果。六個，七個，或
者九個都 OK!

Weshly

好吖。好吖。拜拜！

地圖掛

dei₋₆ tou₋₄ gwaa₋₃

Maphack

Weshly

早晨·我而家搵緊啲嘢。
可唔可以幫我手呀？

zou⁻² san₋₄ ngo₅ ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹ wan⁻² gan⁻² di⁻¹ je₅ ho⁻² m₋₄
ho⁻² ji₅ bong⁻¹ ngo₅ sau⁻² aa₋₄?

Good morning. I'm looking for some stuff. Would you be able to help me?

Staff

梗係啦！你搵緊乜嘢呀？

gang⁻² hai₋₆ laa⁻¹! nei₅ wan⁻² gan⁻² mat⁻¹ je₅ aa₋₄?

Of course! What stuff are you looking for?

Weshly

我搵緊兩條魚，三條龍，
四隻雞，同十粒提子。

ngo₅ wan⁻² gan⁻² loeng₅ tiu₄ jyu₄, saam⁻¹ tiu₄ lung₄,
sei₃ zek₃ gai⁻¹, tung₄ sap₆ nap⁻¹ tai₄ zi⁻².

***I'm looking for two fish, three dragons, four chickens, and
ten grapes.***

Staff

哈哈．我哋一定冇龍．你
好笑．但係我哋有魚，雞，
同提子．你鍾意綠色嘅
提子定係紅色嘅？

haa⁻¹ haa⁻¹. ngo₅ dei⁻² jat⁻¹ ding₆ mou₅ lung₄. nei₅ hou⁻²
siu⁻³. daan₆ hai₆ ngo₅ dei⁻² jau₅ jyu₄, gai⁻¹, tung₄ tai₄
zi⁻². nei₅ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ luk₆ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³ tai₄ zi⁻² ding₆ hai₆
hung₄ sik⁻¹ ge⁻³?

Haha. We definitely don't have Dragons. You are funny. But we have Fish, Chicken, and Grapes. Do you like green Grapes or Red ones?

Weshly

兩個都鍾意食。喺邊度
可以搵到啲嘢？

loeng₅ go⁻³ dou⁻¹ zung⁻¹ ji⁻³ sik₆. hai⁻² bin⁻¹ dou₆ ho⁻²
ji₅ wan⁻² dou⁻² go⁻² di⁻¹ je₅?

I like eating both of them. Where can I find those things?

Staff

喺呢度會搵到雞，喺個
度會搵到魚同提子。

hai⁻² ni⁻¹ dou₆ wui₅ wan⁻² dou⁻² gai⁻¹, hai⁻² go⁻² dou₆
wui₅ wan⁻² dou⁻² jyu₄ tung₄ tai₄ zi⁻².

***Here you can find the Chickens, over there you can find the
Fish and Grapes.***

Weshly

好吖. 唔該晒.

hou⁻² aa⁻¹. m₋₄ goi⁻¹ saai⁻³.

Sounds good. Thank you so much.

Staff

唔使唔該. 你走之前想
俾芒果盒你. 唔使俾錢.

m₋₄ sai⁻² m₋₄ goi⁻¹. nei₅ zau⁻² zi⁻¹ cin₋₄ soeng⁻² bei⁻²
mong⁻¹ gwo⁻² hap₋₆ nei₅. m₋₄ sai⁻² bei⁻² cin₋₄.

***You're welcome. Before you leave I would like to give you this
Mango box. No need to pay money.***

Weshly

哦！多謝！

o₋₄! do⁻¹ ze₋₆!

Oh! Thank you!

Staff

唔使。喺盒度可以放到
好多芒果。六個，七個，或
者九個都 OK!

m₋₄ sai⁻². hai⁻² hap₋₆ dou₋₆ ho⁻² ji₋₅ fong₋₃ dou⁻² hou⁻²
do⁻¹ mong⁻¹ gwo⁻². luk₋₆ go₋₃, cat⁻¹ go₋₃, waak₋₆ ze⁻² gau⁻²
go₋₃ dou⁻¹ OK!

***You're welcome. You can put a lot of Mangos inside the box.
6, 7, or even 9 are all OK!***

Weshly

好吖. 好吖. 拜拜!

hou⁻² aa⁻¹. hou⁻² aa⁻¹. baai⁻¹ baai⁻³!

Sounds good, sounds good. Bye bye!



粵語索引

jyut₆ jyu₅ sok₃ jan₅

Cantodex

Cantodex

This is a database containing basic information for all of the monsters you will encounter in the game. They will continue to be useful to you throughout your Cantonese journey.

This list is constantly being refined.

Pronouns

我	I
ngo ₅	
你	You
nei ₅	
佢	He / She / It / They (Singular)
keoi ₅	

Plurality

哋

dei²

Used to turn pronouns into their plural form.

Negation

唔

m₄

Used for negation.

Ownership

嘅

ge⁻³

Used to indicate ownership.

Classifiers

個

go⁻³

The general classifier.

本

bun⁻²

Used for books.

條

tiu₋₄

For long objects or strips.

架

gaa⁻³

For machines or electronic devices.

隻

zek⁻³

For animals.

間

gaan⁻¹

For buildings.

枝

zi⁻¹

For pens, pencils, etc

封

fung⁻¹

For letters (Document)

Ending Particles

呀

aa₄

Can be used for questions or statements in a generic way.

咩

me⁻¹

Shows being surprised or sarcasm.

啦

laa⁻¹

Used for statements.

啊

aa-3

Used to show agreement.

㗎

wo-3

Indicates some sort of realization or to indicate something is important.

Tenses / Action State

過

gwo-3

Action was previously experienced (Past).

咗

zo-2

Action has been completed (Past).

緊

gan-2

Action is currently in progress (Present).

會

wui₅

Action is going to happen (Future).

到

dou⁻²

Action was able to be completed successfully.

唔到

m₄ dou⁻²

Action was not able to be completed successfully.

未

mei₆

Action has not yet happened.

晒

saai₃

Action is done but some other related action may still happen.

完

jyun₄

Action is completely finished.

Nouns

嘢

je₅

A thing (General)

書

syu⁻¹

Book

魚

jyu₄

Fish

馬

maa₅

Horse

龍

lung₄

Dragon

貓

maau⁻¹

Cat

龍 貓

lung₄ maau⁻¹

Chinchilla

狗

gau⁻²

Dog

菜

coi₃

Vegetable

生果

saang⁻¹ gwo⁻²

Fruit

老鼠

lou₅ syu⁻²

Rat / Mouse

蘋果

ping₄ gwo⁻²

Apple

火

fo⁻²

Fire

草

cou⁻²

Grass

電

din₋₆

Electricity

水

seoi²

Water

雨

jyu₋₅

Rain

雪

syut₋₃

Snow

茶

caa₋₄

Tea

杯

bui⁻¹

Cup

樽

zeon⁻¹

Bottle

果汁

gwo⁻² zap⁻¹

Juice

橙

caang⁻²

Orange

芒果

mong⁻¹ gwo⁻²

Mango

香蕉

hoeng⁻¹ ziu⁻¹

Banana

錢

cin₋₄

Money

蚊

man⁻¹

General unit for currency (Dollar, Peso, Euro, Yen, Etc)

問題

man₋₆ tai₋₄

Question / Problem

事

si₋₆

Problem / Issue

機

gei⁻¹

Machine

車

ce⁻¹

Car / Vehicle

巴士

baa⁻¹ si⁻²

Bus

的士

dik⁻¹ si⁻²

Taxi

地鐵

dei₋₆ tit₋₃

Train (Underground)

的士

dik⁻¹ si⁻²

Taxi

飛機

fei⁻¹ gei⁻¹

Airplane (lit. Flying Machine)

站

zaam₋₆

Station (Transportation)

公園

gung⁻¹ jyun⁻²

Park (Location)

地圖

dei₋₆ tou₋₄

Map

博物館

bok-3 mat-6 gun-2

Museum

顏色

ngaan-4 sik-1

Color

三文治

saam-1 man-4 zi-6

Sandwich

功課

gung-1 fo-3

Homework

寫字樓

se-2 zi-6 lau-4

Office

老師

lou₅ si⁻¹

Teacher

醫生

ji⁻¹ saang⁻¹

Doctor (Medical)

律師

leot₆ si⁻¹

Lawyer

工程師

gung⁻¹ cing₄ si⁻¹

Engineer

工人

gung⁻¹ jan₄

Maid

電腦

din₋₆ nou₋₅

Computer

電視

din₋₆ si₋₆

Television

電話

din₋₆ waa⁻²

Telephone (Landline or Mobile)

手

sau⁻²

Hand (Body)

手機

sau⁻² gei⁻¹

Cellphone

號碼

hou₆ maa₅

Number

荔枝

lai₆ zi⁻¹

Lychee (Fruit)

士多啤梨

si⁻² do⁻¹ be⁻¹ lei⁻²

Strawberry

朱古力

zyu⁻¹ gu⁻¹ lik⁻¹

Chocolate

雲呢拿

wan₄ nei⁻¹ laa⁻²

Vanilla

多士

do⁻¹ si⁻²

Toast (Food)

枱

toi₋₄

Table

馬路

maa₋₅ lou₋₆

Road

司機

si⁻¹ gei⁻¹

Driver

地方

dei₋₆ fong⁻¹

A place

鋪頭

pou⁻³ tau⁻²

A store

超級市場

ciu⁻¹ kap⁻¹ si⁵ coeng⁻⁴

Supermarket

單車

daan⁻¹ ce⁻¹

Bicycle

信

seon⁻³

Letter (Document)

火車

fo⁻² ce⁻¹

Train (Above Ground)

Family

屋企

uk⁻¹ kei⁻²

Home

人

jan₋₄

Person / People

屋企人

uk⁻¹ kei⁻² jan₋₄

Family

爸爸

baa₋₄ baa⁻¹

Father

媽媽

maa₋₄ maa⁻¹

Mother

爸爸媽媽

baa₋₄ baa⁻¹ maa₋₄ maa⁻¹

Parents

哥哥

go₋₄ go⁻¹

Older Brother

姐姐

ze₋₄ ze⁻¹

Older Sister

細佬

sai₋₃ lou⁻²

Younger Brother

細妹

sai₋₃ mui₋₆

Younger Sister

老公

lou₅ gung⁻¹

Husband

老婆

lou₅ po₄

Wife

仔

zai⁻²

Son

女

neoi₅

Daughter. Girl. Female.

Locations

香港

hoeng⁻¹ gong⁻²

Hong Kong

台灣

toi₄ waan⁻¹

Taiwan

澳門

ou₃ mun₄

Macau

美國

mei₅ gwok₃

United States of America

中國

zung⁻¹ gwok₃

China

英國

jing⁻¹ gwok₃

United Kingdom

法國

faat-3 gwok-3

France

意大利

ji-3 daai-6 lei-6

Italy

西班牙

sai-1 baan-1 ngaa-4

Spain

日本

jat-6 bun-2

Japan

韓國

hon-4 gwok-3

Korea

越南

jyut₋₆ naam₋₄

Vietnam

墨西哥

mak₋₆ sai⁻¹ go⁻¹

Mexico

加拿大

gaa⁻¹ naa₋₄ daai₋₆

Canada

紐約

nau⁻² joek₋₃

New York

加州

gaa⁻¹ zau⁻¹

California

波士頓

bo⁻¹ si⁻² deon⁻²

Boston

澳洲

ou⁻³ zau⁻¹

Australia

歐洲

au⁻¹ zau⁻¹

Europe

亞洲

aa⁻³ zau⁻¹

Asia

Colors

紅色

hung⁻⁴ sik⁻¹

Red

白色

baak₋₆ sik⁻¹

White

黑色

hak⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Black

黃色

wong₋₄ sik⁻¹

Yellow

藍色

laam₋₄ sik⁻¹

Blue

綠色

luk₋₆ sik⁻¹

Green

橙 色

caang² sik⁻¹

Orange

金 色

gam⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Gold

銀 色

ngan₄ sik⁻¹

Silver

紫 色

zi⁻² sik⁻¹

Purple

粉 紅 色

fan⁻² hung₄ sik⁻¹

Pink

啡色

fe⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Brown

灰色

fui⁻¹ sik⁻¹

Gray

Verbs

係

hai₋₆

To be

有

jau₋₅

To have

冇

mou₋₅

To not have

做

zou₋₆

To do

可以

ho⁻² ji₋₅

To be able to

食

sik₋₆

To eat

飲

jam⁻²

To drink

要

jiu₋₃

To need

鍾意

zung⁻¹ ji⁻³

To like

想

soeng⁻²

To want

問

man₋₆

To ask

學

hok₋₆

To learn

教

gaau⁻³

To teach

走

zau⁻²

To leave

叫

giu⁻³

To call

買

maai₅

To buy

賣

maai₆

To sell

喺

hai⁻²

To be located at

睇

tai⁻²

To see, read, look, watch

去

heoi⁻³

To go

同意

tung⁻⁴ ji⁻³

To agree

知

zi⁻¹

To know (A piece of information)

識

sik⁻¹

To know (A person or a skill)

煮

zyu⁻²

To cook

整

zing⁻²

To make (like making a sandwich)

煲

bou⁻¹

To boil

搭

daap⁻³

To ride (Transportation)

飛

fei⁻¹

To fly

講

gong⁻²

To speak

話

waa⁻²

To say. Speech.

等

dang⁻²

To wait

覺得

gok⁻³ dak⁻¹

To think. To feel.

打

daa⁻²

To hit

玩

waan⁻²

To play

揸

zaa⁻¹

To drive

起身

hei⁻² san⁻¹

To get up

瞓覺

fan⁻³ gaau⁻³

To sleep

醒

seng⁻²

To wake up

信

seon⁻³

To trust

Adjectives

好

hou⁻²

Good. Very

真

zan⁻¹

Real. Really

𢵄

gui⁻⁶

Tired (Physical)

大

daai⁻⁶

Big

細

sai⁻³

Small

長

coeng⁻⁴

Long

短

dyun⁻²

Short

高

gou⁻¹

Tall

矮

ai⁻²

Short

靚

leng⁻³

Beautiful. Pretty.

得意

dak⁻¹ ji⁻³

Cute

核突

wat₋₆ dat₋₆

Ugly

飽

baau⁻²

To be full (from food)

餓

ngo₋₆

Hungry

簡單

gaan⁻² daan⁻¹

Simple

Numbers

零

ling₋₄

Zero (0)

一

jat⁻¹

One (1)

二

ji₋₆

Two (2). Used in counting.

兩

loeng₋₅

Two (2). Used in quantities.

三

saam⁻¹

Three (3)

四

sei⁻³

Four (4)

五

ng₅

Five (5)

六

luk₆

Six (6)

七

cat⁻¹

Seven (7)

八

baat₋₃

Eight (8)

九

gau⁻²

Nine (9)

十

sap₋₆

Ten (10)

廿

jaa₋₆ aa⁻¹

Alternate Writing For Twenty (20, 二十)

卅

saa⁻¹ aa⁻¹

Alternate Writing For Thirty (30, 三十)

百

baak₋₃

Hundred (100)

千

cin⁻¹

Thousand (1,000)

萬

maan₋₆

Ten Thousand (10,000)

億

jik⁻¹

Hundred Million (100,000,000)

Time

時間

si₋₄ gaan⁻¹

Time

點鐘

$\text{dim}^{-2} \text{zung}^{-1}$

O'Clock

鐘頭

$\text{zung}^{-1} \text{tau}^{-2}$

Hour

分

fan^{-1}

Minute

秒

miu_{-5}

Second

年

nin_{-4}

Year

月

jyut₋₆

Month

日

jat₋₆

Day

鐘

zung⁻¹

O'Clock

禮拜

lai_{,5} baai₋₃

Week (Interchangeable with 星期)

星期

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄

Week (Interchangeable with 禮拜)

今日

gam⁻¹ jat₋₆

Today

尋日

cam₋₄ jat₋₆

Yesterday

聽日

ting₋₃ jat₋₆

Tomorrow

前日

cin₋₄ jat₋₆

The day before yesterday.

後日

hau₋₆ jat₋₆

The day after tomorrow.

今年

gam⁻¹ nin₋₄

This year

舊年

gau₋₆ nin₋₄

Last year

出年

ceot⁻¹ nin₋₄

Next year

今個月

gam⁻¹ go⁻³ jyut₋₆

This month

下個月

haa₋₆ go⁻³ jyut₋₆

Next month

上個月

soeng₋₆ go₋₃ jyut₋₆

Last month

歲

seoi₋₃

Age

而家

ji₋₄ gaa⁻¹

Now

星期一

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ jat⁻¹

Monday

星期二

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ ji₋₆

Tuesday

星期三

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ saam⁻¹

Wednesday

星期四

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ sei⁻³

Thursday

星期五

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ ng₋₅

Friday

星期六

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ luk₋₆

Saturday

星期日

sing⁻¹ kei₋₄ jat₋₆

Sunday

一月

jat⁻¹ jyut₋₆

January

二月

ji₋₆ jyut₋₆

February

三月

saam⁻¹ jyut₋₆

March

四月

sei₋₃ jyut₋₆

April

五月

ng₋₅ jyut₋₆

May

六月

luk₋₆ jyut₋₆

June

七月

cat⁻¹ jyut₋₆

July

八月

baat⁻³ jyut₋₆

August

九月

gau⁻² jyut₋₆

September

十月

sap₋₆ jyut₋₆

October

十一月

sap₋₆ jat⁻¹ jyut₋₆

November

十二月

sap₋₆ ji₋₆ jyut₋₆

December

Position

上

soeng₋₆

Top / Above

下

haa₋₆

Bottom / Below

左

zo⁻²

Left

右

jau⁻²

Right

前

cin₋₄

In Front

後

hau₋₆

Behind

之前

zi⁻¹ cin₋₄

Before

之後

zi⁻¹ hau₋₆

After

一直

jat⁻¹ zik₋₆

Straight

到

dou⁻²

To / Towards

北

bak⁻¹

North

南

naam₋₄

South

東

dung⁻¹

East

西

sai⁻¹

West

外

ngoi₋₆

Outer / Outside

內

noi₋₆

Inner / Inside

度

dou₋₆

At. Usually used with 喺.

呢 個

ni⁻¹ go⁻³

This

嗰 個

go⁻² go⁻³

That

呢 度

ni⁻¹ dou₋₆

Here

嗰 度

go⁻² dou₋₆

There

呢 啲

ni⁻¹ di⁻¹

These

嗰 啲

go⁻² di⁻¹

Those

Question Words

邊個

bin⁻¹ go⁻³

Who / Which

乜嘢

mat⁻¹ je⁵

What

幾時

gei⁻² si⁻⁴

When

邊度

bin⁻¹ dou⁻⁶

Where

點解

dim⁻² gai⁻²

Why

點

dim⁻²

How

因為

jan⁻¹ wai₋₆

Because

Grammar

同理

tung₋₄ maai₋₄

And

定係

ding₋₆ hai₋₆

Or (Question)

或者

waak₋₆ ze⁻²

Or (Statement)

如果

jyu₄ gwo⁻²

If

但係

daan₆ hai₆

But

嗰陣時

go⁻² zan₆ si₄

When. At that time.

嘅時候

ge⁻³ si₄ hau₆

When. At that time.

除咗 X 之外 Y

ceoi₄ zo⁻² X zi⁻¹ ngoi₆ Y

Besides X, There is Y.

而且

ji₄ ce⁻²

Additionally. And Also.

另外

ling₆ ngoi₆

Additionally. And Also.

就

zau₆

Then. As soon as.

一齊

jat⁻¹ cai₄

Together

最

zeoi₃

The most

雖然

seoi⁻¹ jin₋₄

Although

唔止 X, 但係 Y

m₋₄ zi⁻² X, daan₋₆ hai₋₆ Y

Not only X, but Y

所以

so⁻² ji₋₅

Therefore. So.

仲

zung₋₆

Still (Continue to)

先

sin⁻¹

To do something first

吓

haa⁻²

To do an action a bit.

Phrases

多謝

do⁻¹ ze₋₆

Thank you (Gifts, Compliments)

唔該

m₋₄ goi⁻¹

Thank you (Service, Assistance). Excuse Me.

唔使

m₋₄ sai⁻²

You are welcome (lit. No need)

你好

nei₅ hou⁻²

Hello

點呀？

dim⁻² aa₋₄?

What's up? How are you doing?

好耐冇見

hou⁻² noi₋₆ mou₋₅ gin₋₃

Long time no see.

唔使客氣

m₋₄ sai⁻² haak₋₃ hei₋₃

You are welcome (lit. No need to be so polite).

冇問題

mou₋₅ man₋₆ tai₋₄

No problem

早晨

zou⁻² san₋₄

Good Morning

再見

zoi-3 gin-3

Goodbye (lit. Again see)

拜拜

baai-3 baai-3

Bye Bye

早啱

zou⁻² tau⁻²

Good Night (but said to someone you are close to)

打機

daa⁻² gei⁻¹

To play video games.

玩遊戲

waan⁻² jau₄ hei-3

To play games (not electronic games).



更加資料

gang⁻³ gaa⁻¹ zi⁻¹ liu⁻²

Additional Information

Additional Information

The following is my recommended list of Cantonese tools and resources. I'm not sponsored by any of these organizations, and have spent my own money for all of my material. If I ever do become sponsored in any way, I'll mention it.

Cantonese Books

My Cantonese book collection consists mostly of books purchased at the [Greenwood Press](#). They have an Amazing, High Quality Cantonese book collection, and they definitely deserve support. I've also purchased a few books from Amazon that weren't available at the Greenwood Press. Below you can find my list of recommended Cantonese books at different levels of competency. I would recommend getting them from top to bottom, however, if there is a certain book that excites you, then get it! All of the below books are fun and enjoyable in their own unique way. I thank all the Authors and Publishers for making these books a reality.

Note: As of the time of this writing (**2026-03-06-2100 ET**), the Greenwood Press website is down and only displays a white page upon loading. The website has been down for a while and I'm not sure when or if the website will come back up. I'm not sure if they went out of business or if they were shut down. I'll be monitoring their site and will update this in the future. I sent them an email but I still haven't heard anything back from them.

Beginner Level

- [Cantonese Chinese Characters, Level 1 Basic 250: In Truly Traditional Script](#)
 - Tao Yung (ISBN: 979-8328120524)
- [Cantonese for English Speakers Book 1-2](#)
 - Dr. Esther Yuk Wah Lai (ISBN: 978-962-279-256-2)
- [A Cantonese Book \(3rd Edition\)](#)
 - Chan Kwok Kin, Betty Hung (ISBN: 978-962-279-266-1)
- [Cantonese in Hong Kong](#)
 - Kwok-kin Chan, Chung-mou Si (ISBN: 978-962-279-247-0)
- [Discover with Jade: Gung Gung's Garden \(Cantonese\)](#)
 - Sheun Lee, Tammy Do (ISBN: 1998215024 / 978-1998215027)
 - This is a children's book but may be a good addition to your collection.

Intermediate Level

- [About Hong Kong - For Intermediate Cantonese Learners](#)

- Betty Hung, C. M. Si (ISBN: 962-279-225-1)
- [**Talk to Me in Cantonese**](#)
 - Betty Hung (ISBN: 9888455869 / 978-9888455867)
 - This is the sequel to A Cantonese Book (3rd Edition).
- [**A Feng Shui Master - Learning Cantonese through Stories**](#)
 - Lee Siu Lun (ISBN: 962-279-244-8)
- [**Fun With Cantonese - Nouns**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-259-3)
- [**Fun with Cantonese - Verb**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 962-279-223-5)
- [**Fun with Cantonese - Adjectives**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-306-4)
- [**Fun With Cantonese - Basic Patterns**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-260-9)
- [**Fun with Cantonese - Idioms and Common Sayings**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-334-7)
- [**Fun with Cantonese - Colloquial Expressions**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-316-3)
- [**Fun with Cantonese - Sounds and Tones**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 962-279-222-7)
- [**Fun with Cantonese - Numerals**](#)
 - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-332-3)

Advanced Level

- [**Wedding Bells: Cantonese Reading Material for Intermediate and Advanced Learners**](#)
 - Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 9622792030)
- [**Advanced Level Current Cantonese Colloquialisms**](#)
 - Yin-Ping Cream Lee (ISBN: 9622791883)

Cantonese Dictionaries

I normally use a combination of [Pleco](#) w/ their paid Cantonese Dictionaries & Extensions, and [Cantodict](#).

Cantonese Keyboards (iOS, Android, Web)

You can type Cantonese using **Jyutping** on iOS, Android, Windows, or Web by using [TypeDuck](#). If for whatever reason you can't install TypeDuck, there are a few other ways you can type Cantonese as well.

iOS

- Go to **Settings -> General -> Keyboard -> Keyboards**.
- Select **Add New Keyboard**.
- Search for **Cantonese, Traditional**
- Select **Phonetic**
- Click **Done**.

Note: The **iOS Cantonese Phonetic Keyboard** is not **Jyutping**, but a close variation. Hopefully one day Apple will support the native **Jyutping** keyboard directly.

Android

- Download **Gboard**.
- Search for **Cantonese** in the **Languages** section and select 粵語 (jyut₋₆ jyu₅).
- Then select 粵語拼音 (jyut₋₆ jyu₅ ping₋₃ jam₋₁), and unselect any other options (feel free to select what you do want though).
- Make sure that for the 粵語拼音 (jyut₋₆ jyu₅ ping₋₃ jam₋₁), that **Jyutping** is the chosen format under the **Romanization scheme** category.

Web

If you have an internet connection, you can use the [TypeDuck Web UI](#) to type Jyutping.

